iPhone User Guide

Everything you need to know about iPhone

Your iPhone

iPhone models compatible with iOS 15

This guide helps you get started using iPhone and discover all the amazing things it can do with iOS 15, which is compatible with the following models:

	iPhone 12 mini
	iPhone 12
	iPhone 12 Pro
	iPhone 12 Pro Max
	iPhone 11
	iPhone 11 Pro
	iPhone 11 Pro Max
	iPhone XR
	iPhone XS
	iPhone XS Max
	iPhone X
	iPhone SE (2nd generation)
	iPhone 8
	iPhone 8 Plus
	iPhone 7
	iPhone 7 Plus
	iPhone 6s
	iPhone 6s Plus
	iPhone SE (1st generation)

Identify your iPhone model and iOS version

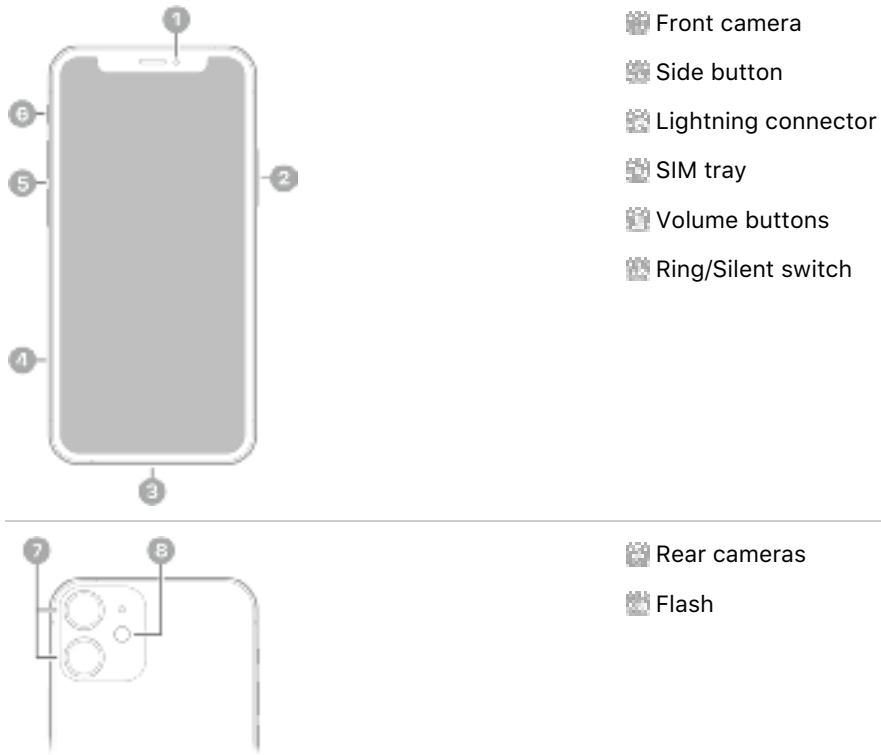Go to Settings > General > About. See Get information about your iPhone.

To determine your iPhone model from the physical details, see the Apple Support article Identify your iPhone model.

You can update to the latest iOS software if your model supports it.

Your features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier. To find out which features are supported in your region, see the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Note: Apps and services that send or receive data over a cellular network may incur additional fees. Contact your carrier for information about your service plan and fees.
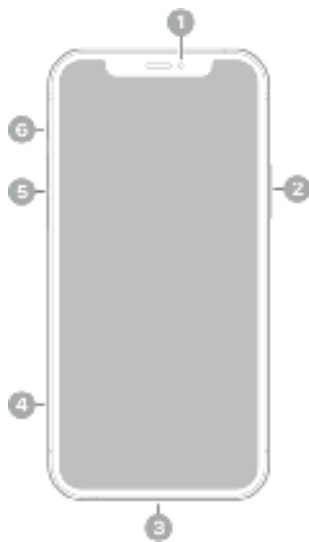
iPhone 12 mini

- Front camera
- Side button
- Lightning connector
- SIM tray
- Volume buttons
- Ring/Silent switch

- Rear cameras
- Flash

Get started with iPhone 12 mini

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone 12

Front camera

Side button

Lightning connector

SIM tray

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone 12

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone 12 Pro

🔲 Front camera

🔲 Side button

🔲 Lightning connector

🔲 SIM tray

🔲 Volume buttons
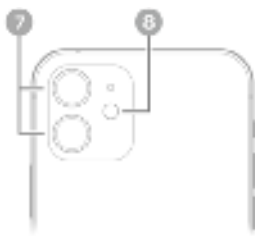
🔲 Ring/Silent switch

🔲 Rear cameras

🔲 Flash

🔲 LiDAR Scanner

Get started with iPhone 12 Pro

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone 12 Pro Max

1 Front camera

2 Side button

3 Lightning connector
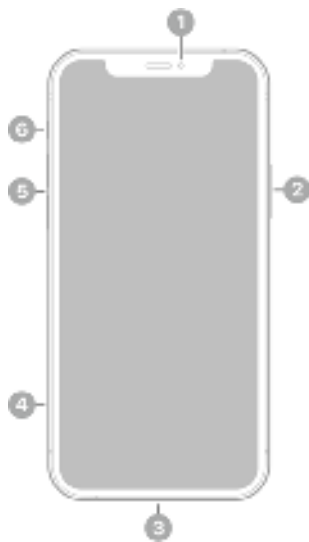
4 SIM tray

5 Volume buttons

6 Ring/Silent switch

7 Rear cameras

8 Flash

9 LiDAR Scanner

Get started with iPhone 12 Pro Max

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone SE (2nd generation)

Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone SE (2nd generation)

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15
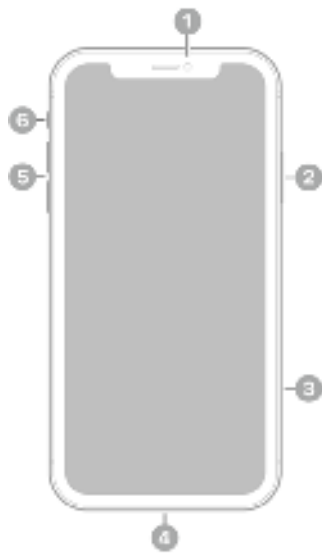
iPhone 11

Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch
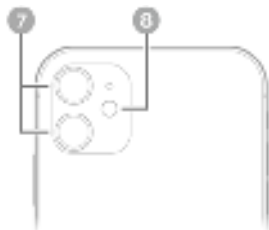
Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone 11

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15
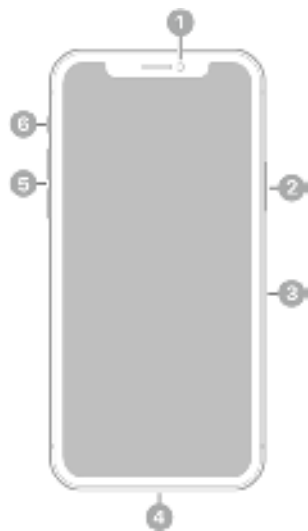
iPhone 11 Pro

- Front camera
- Side button
- SIM tray
- Lightning connector
- Volume buttons
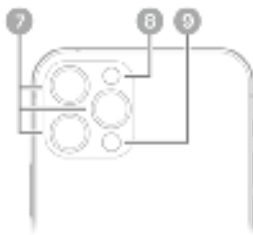- Ring/Silent switch
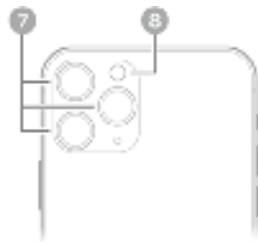
- Rear cameras
- Flash

Get started with iPhone 11 Pro

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [iPhone camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone](#)
- [What's new in iOS 15](#)

iPhone 11 Pro Max
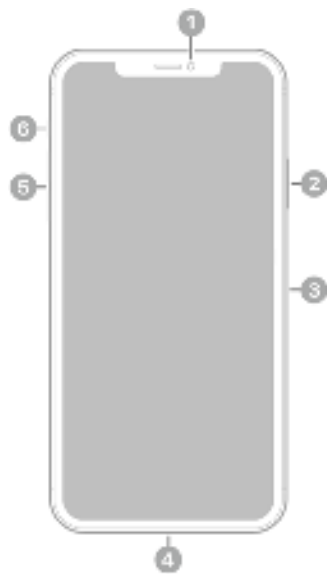
Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch
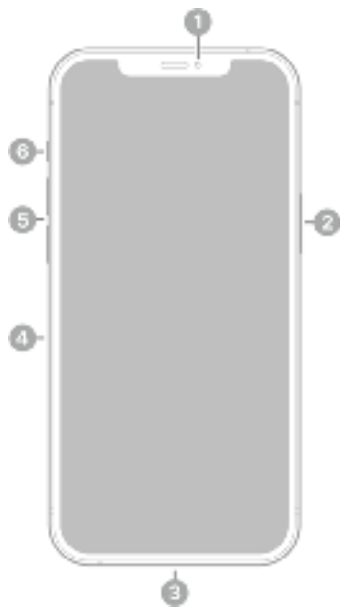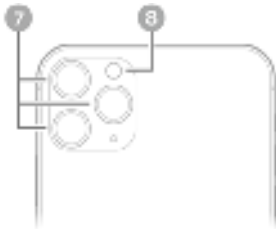
Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone 11 Pro Max

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone XR
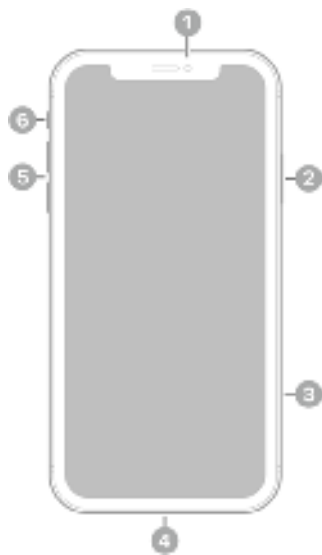
Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

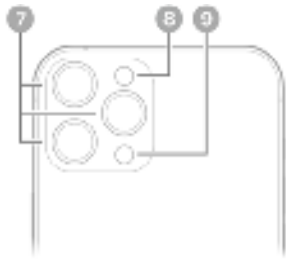## Get started with iPhone XR

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15
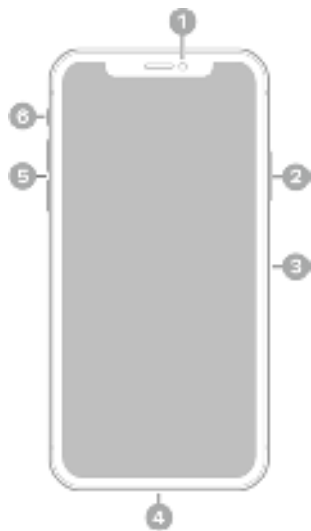
iPhone XS

Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone XS

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone XS Max
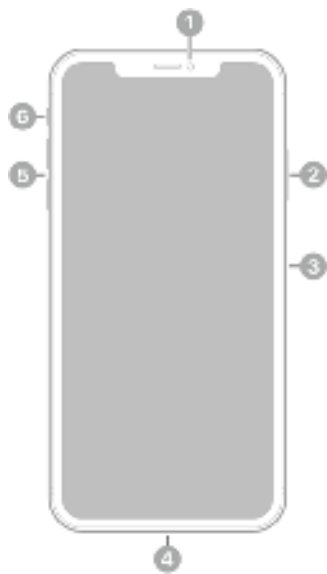
- Front camera
- Side button
- SIM tray
- Lightning connector
- Volume buttons
- Ring/Silent switch

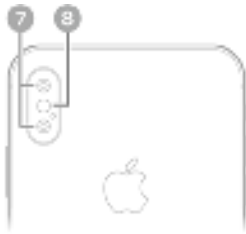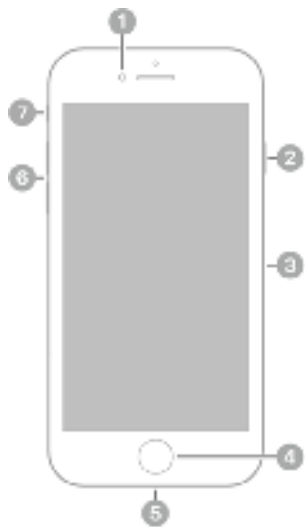- Rear cameras
- Flash

Get started with iPhone XS Max

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15
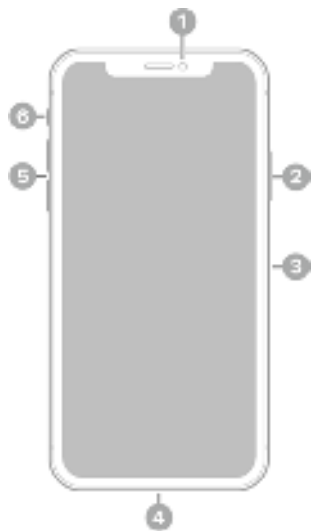
iPhone X

Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone X

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone 8

Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone 8

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone 8 Plus
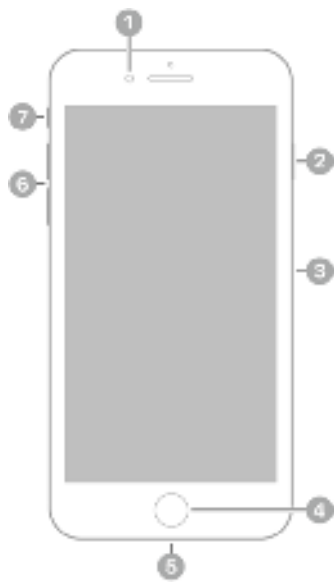
Front camera

Side button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear cameras

Flash

Get started with iPhone 8 Plus

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures

- iPhone camera basics

- Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone

- What's new in iOS 15
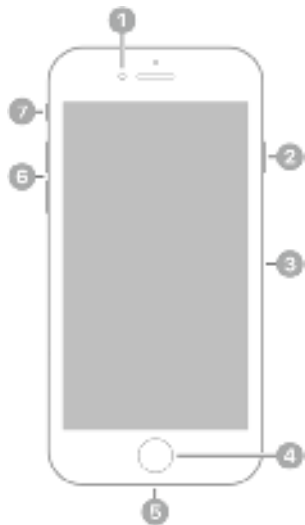
iPhone 7

Front camera

Sleep/Wake button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone 7

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)

- [Learn basic gestures](#)

- [iPhone camera basics](#)

- [What's new in iOS 15](#)

iPhone 7 Plus
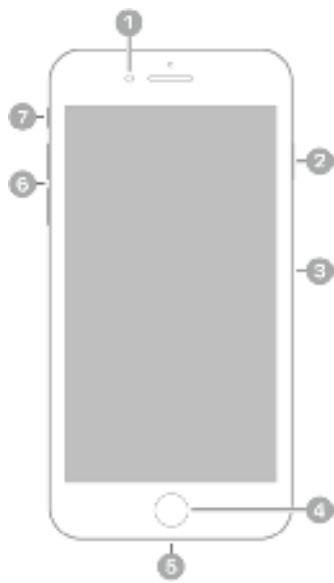
🔲 Front camera

🔲 Sleep/Wake button

🔲 SIM tray

🔲 Home button/Touch ID

🔲 Lightning connector

🔲 Volume buttons

🔲 Ring/Silent switch

🔲 Rear cameras

🔲 Flash

Get started with iPhone 7 Plus

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures

- iPhone camera basics

- What's new in iOS 15
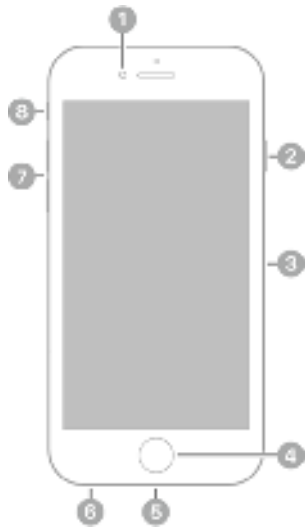
iPhone 6s

Front camera

Sleep/Wake button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Headphone jack

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone 6s

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)

- [Learn basic gestures](#)

- [iPhone camera basics](#)

- [What's new in iOS 15](#)

iPhone 6s Plus
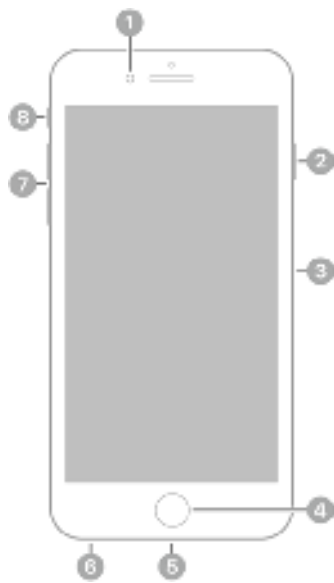
Front camera

Sleep/Wake button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Headphone jack

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone 6s Plus

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures

- iPhone camera basics

- What's new in iOS 15

iPhone SE (1st generation)
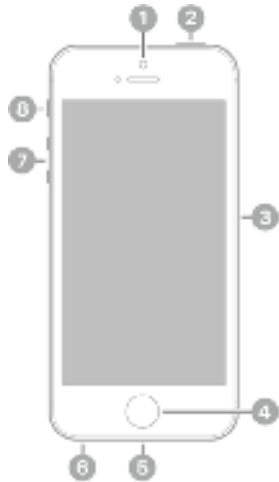
Front camera

Sleep/Wake button

SIM tray

Home button/Touch ID

Lightning connector

Headphone jack

Volume buttons

Ring/Silent switch

Rear camera

Flash

Get started with iPhone SE (1st generation)

- Turn on and set up iPhone

- Learn basic gestures

- iPhone camera basics

- What's new in iOS 15

What's new in iOS 15

SharePlay Use SharePlay in FaceTime to stay connected with friends and family—you can watch TV shows and movies together, listen to music together, or share your screen. See Use SharePlay to watch and listen together in FaceTime.

Focus Stay focused and in the moment by setting your Focus status to let other people know when you're busy. Pick from a list of suggested Focus options or create your own. Your Focus status automatically displays in Messages to let others know you're busy. See Set up Focus.

Notifications Notifications have a new look, with contact photos and larger app icons to make notifications easier to identify. You can also receive a notification summary delivered daily, based on a schedule you set. See Schedule a notification summary.

Live Text Live Text identifies text and useful information in your photos and within your iPhone camera frame, so you can make a call, send an email, and copy or translate text with just a tap. See Use Live Text and Visual Look Up in Photos and Use Live Text with the iPhone camera.

Visual Look Up Visual Look Up identifies objects in your photos, such as popular landmarks, plants, books, and art, and then provides more images and information about the object from the web. See Use Live Text and Visual Look Up in Photos.

FaceTime Grid view displays people in your group FaceTime calls in same-size tiles that automatically highlight the speaker. You can use Voice Isolation to minimize background noise and Portrait mode to put the visual focus on you. You can also invite anyone to join a FaceTime call using a unique web link. See Make a Group FaceTime call, Make and receive FaceTime calls, and Change FaceTime audio and video settings.

Messages Links, photos, and other content shared with you in Messages are featured in a new Shared with You section in corresponding apps. Multiple photos in Messages now appear as a collage or collection of images that you can swipe through for easy browsing. See Share content with friends, Listen to music shared with you, Read stories shared with you, and View photos and videos shared with you.
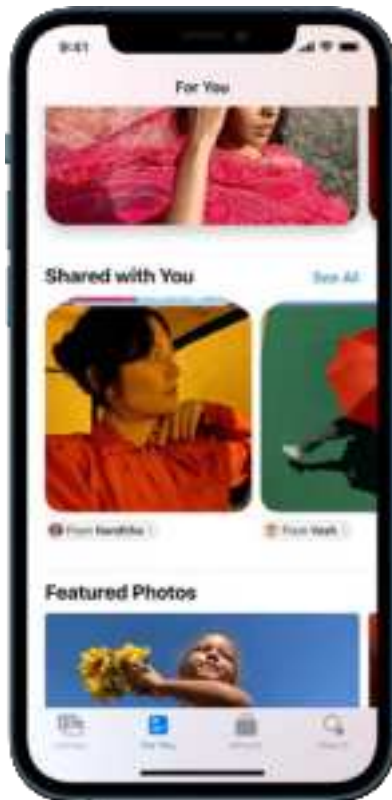
Memoji Reflect your look and style in all new ways. Choose outfits and new headwear for your Memoji, as well as accessibility customizations. See Create your own Memoji.

Maps New driving features offer road details like turn lanes, crosswalks, and bike lanes. You can also see street-level perspectives as you approach complex interchanges. Updated public transit features show nearby stations and transit times and walking instructions are available in augmented reality. See Get driving directions, Get transit directions, and Get walking directions in.
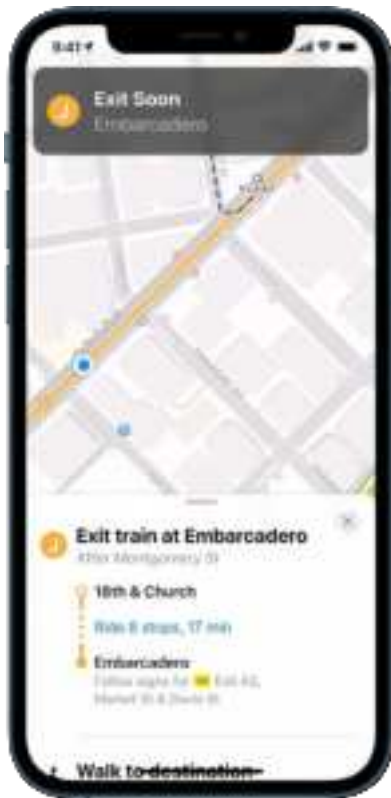
Safari The new tab bar at the bottom of the screen makes it easier to access and navigate your tabs. Tab groups let you organize tabs and switch between them more easily. Use Voice search to search the web and install Safari extensions on your iPhone. See Use tabs in Safari and <link to come in Sign Off>.

Notes Organize your notes with tags, such as #travel or #recipes, to easily search and locate notes in different categories. Mentions allow members of shared notes to notify each other of important updates, and an Activity view that shows recent changes to a note in a single list. See Use tags and Share notes and collaborate.

Reminders Categorize reminders as you create them by adding tags, such as #errands or #homework. Create Smart Lists to automatically organization of reminders by tags, dates, times, locations, priority, and more. See Organize lists in Reminders.

Photos Customize the look and feel of your memories with Memory mixes and other editing options. You can also choose songs from Apple Music to play in the background of a memory. See Personalize your Memories in Photos on iPhone.

Health Share health data with your loved ones, view a metric to assess your risk of falling, and understand changes in your health with trend analysis. See Share health data with someone close to you, View your walking steadiness data, and View your health trends.

Weather A new design includes animated backgrounds and graphical displays of precipitation, air quality, and temperature maps. See Check the weather.

Privacy The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you've granted them, which third-party domains they contact, and how recently they made contact. Mail Privacy Protection protects you from senders who try to follow your online activity or determine your location. It also prevents senders from seeing if and when you've opened their email. See Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them and Use Mail Privacy Protection.

iCloud+ iCloud+ combines everything iCloud already offers with new premium features including iCloud Private Relay, a new service that protects your privacy online; Hide My Email, an easy way to create a unique, random email address anytime you need one; and expanded support for HomeKit Secure Video recording so you can set up more home security cameras. See Subscribe to iCloud+, Turn on iCloud Private Relay, Hide your personal email address in Safari, and Set up security cameras in Home.

Accessibility Customize display and text size settings for each app. Enlarge text or use boldface, increase contrast, invert colors, and more for only the apps you want. Explore people, objects, text, and tables within images in more detail with VoiceOver. See Customize accessibility settings for specific apps.

Learn tricks for iOS 15 The Tips app adds new suggestions frequently, so you can get the most from your iPhone. See Get tips.

Note: New features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier.

Set up and get started

Turn on and set up iPhone

Turn on and set up your new iPhone over an internet connection. You can also set up iPhone by connecting it to your computer. If you have another iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or an Android device, you can transfer your data to your new iPhone.

Note: If your iPhone is deployed or managed by a company or other organization, see an administrator for setup instructions. For general information, see the Apple at Work website.

Prepare for setup

To make setup as smooth as possible, have the following items available:

- An internet connection through a Wi-Fi network (you may need the name and password of the network) or cellular data service through a carrier

- Your Apple ID and password; if you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one during setup

- Your credit or debit card account information, if you want to add a card to Apple Pay during setup

- Your previous iPhone or a backup of your device, if you're transferring your data to your new device

  💡 **Tip:** If you don't have sufficient storage to back up your device, iCloud will grant you as much as you need to complete a temporary backup, free of charge, for up to three weeks from the purchase of your iPhone. On your previous device with iOS 15 installed, go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset [*device*]. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- Your Android device, if you're transferring your Android content

Turn on and set up your iPhone

1. Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) until the Apple logo appears.
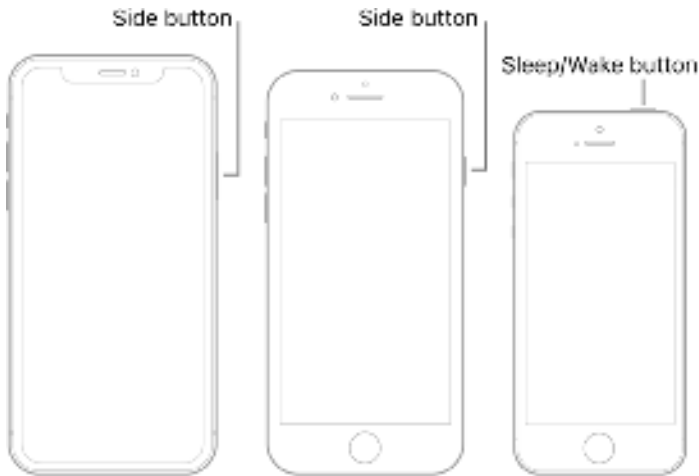
   If iPhone doesn't turn on, you might need to charge the battery. For more help, see the Apple Support article If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch won't turn on or is frozen.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap Set Up Manually, then follow the onscreen setup instructions.

   - If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

     Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

     You can also transfer your data using a wired connection between your devices. See the Apple Support article Use Quick Start to transfer data to a new iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

   - During set up, if you're blind or have low vision, you can triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver, the screen reader. You can also double-tap the screen with three fingers to turn on Zoom. See Get started with accessibility features on iPhone.

Move from an Android device to iPhone

When you first set up your new iPhone, you can automatically and securely move your data from an Android device.

Note: You can use the Move to iOS app only when you first set up iPhone. If you already finished setup and want to use Move to iOS, you must erase your iPhone and start over, or move your data manually. See the Apple Support article Move content manually from your Android device to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

1. On your device with Android version 4.0 or later, see the Apple Support article Move from Android to iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch and download the Move to iOS app.

2. On your iPhone, do the following:

   - Follow the setup assistant.

   - On the Apps & Data screen, tap Move Data from Android.

3. On the Android device, do the following:

   - Turn on Wi-Fi.

   - Open the Move to iOS app.

   - Follow the onscreen instructions.

⚠️ **WARNING:** To avoid injury, read Important safety information for iPhone before using iPhone.

Wake and unlock iPhone

iPhone turns off the display to save power, locks for security, and goes to sleep when you're not using it. You can quickly wake and unlock iPhone when you want to use it again.

Wake iPhone

To wake iPhone, do one of the following:

- Press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

Side button   Side button

Sleep/Wake button
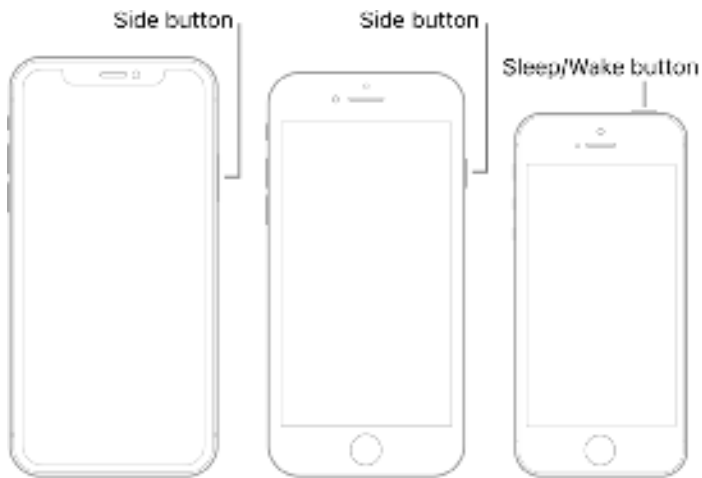
- Raise iPhone. You can turn off Raise to Wake in Settings > Display & Brightness.
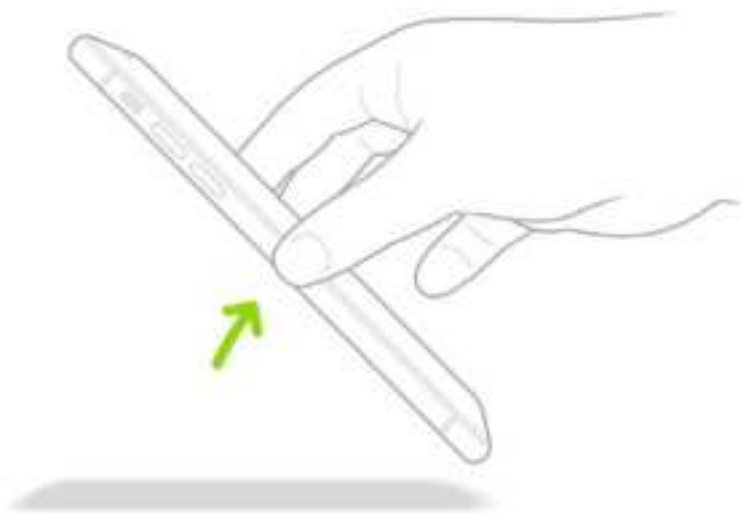
- Tap the screen (supported models).

Unlock iPhone with Face ID

If you didn't set up Face ID when you set up iPhone, see Set up Face ID on iPhone.

1. On supported models, tap the screen or raise iPhone to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

   The lock icon animates from closed to open to indicate that iPhone is unlocked.

2. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

To lock iPhone again, press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model). iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so. However, if Attention Aware Features is turned on in Settings 🖾 > Face ID & Passcode, iPhone won't dim or lock as long as it detects attention.

Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch

When you're wearing your Apple Watch (Series 3 and later), you can use it to securely unlock iPhone when you're wearing a face mask (models with Face ID; watchOS 7.4 or later required). See Unlock iPhone with Apple Watch.

Unlock iPhone with Touch ID

If you didn't set up Touch ID when you set up iPhone, see Set up Touch ID on iPhone.

On an iPhone with a Home button, press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
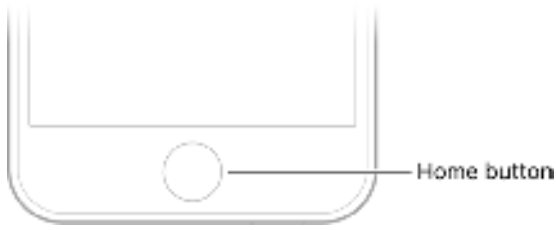
To lock iPhone again, press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model). iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

Unlock iPhone with a passcode

If you didn't create a passcode when you set up iPhone, see Set a passcode on iPhone.

1. Swipe up from the bottom of the Lock Screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).

2. Enter the passcode.

To lock iPhone again, press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model). iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

Set up cellular service on iPhone

The cellular connection on your iPhone requires a SIM from a carrier; contact your carrier to set up a cellular plan.

Supported models of iPhone can connect to 5G networks. See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.

Your iPhone can connect to a carrier network using a physical nano-SIM. iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later support Dual SIM using one physical nano-SIM and one eSIM (not available in all countries or regions).

Here are some of the many ways you can use Dual SIM:

- Use one number for business and another number for personal calls.

- Add a local data plan when you travel to another country or region.

- Have separate voice and data plans.

Note: To use two different carriers, your iPhone must be unlocked.

Install a physical nano-SIM

1. Insert a paper clip or SIM eject tool into the small hole of the SIM tray, then push in toward iPhone to eject the tray.

   SIM tray

   Paper clip
   or SIM
   eject tool
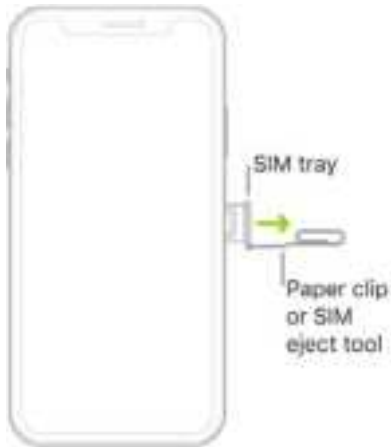
   Note: The shape and orientation of the SIM tray depend on the iPhone model and your country or region.

2. Remove the tray from iPhone.

3. Place the nano-SIM in the tray. The angled corner determines the correct orientation.

   Nano-SIM

4. Insert the tray back into iPhone.

5. If you previously set up a PIN on the nano-SIM, carefully enter the PIN when prompted.

   WARNING: Never try to guess a SIM PIN. An incorrect guess can permanently lock your SIM, and you won't be able to make phone calls or use cellular data through your carrier until you get a new SIM. See the Apple Support article Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

Set up your cellular plan with eSIM

iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later can digitally store an eSIM provided by your carrier.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Cellular, then tap Add Cellular Plan.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Set up a new plan with a QR code provided by your carrier:* Position iPhone so that the QR code appears in the frame, or enter the details manually. You may be asked to enter a confirmation code provided by your carrier.

   - *Install an assigned cellular plan:* If you get a notification from your carrier that a plan was assigned to you, tap Carrier Cellular Plan Ready to Be Installed.

   - *Transfer a SIM from your previous iPhone to your new iPhone:* Choose your phone number from the list.

     If you don't see your phone number, make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID on both iPhone devices. Transferring a SIM to an eSIM isn't supported by all carriers or for all cellular plans. For more info, see the Apple Support article Transfer a SIM from your previous iPhone to eSIM on your new iPhone.

3. Tap Add Cellular Plan.

4. If the new plan is your second line, follow the onscreen instructions to set how you want the plans to work together.

Alternatively, you can activate your cellular plan through your carrier's app (if supported). Go to the App Store, download your carrier's app, then use the app to activate a cellular plan.

You can store more than one eSIM on your iPhone, but you can use only one eSIM at a time. To switch eSIMs, go to Settings > Cellular, tap the plan you want to use, then tap Turn On This Line.

If you have a nano-SIM, you can use it as your second line. Dual SIM works only if you have one physical SIM and one eSIM installed in your iPhone. See the Apple Support article Using Dual SIM with an eSIM.

Manage your cellular plans for Dual SIM

During setup on models with Dual SIM, you can choose how iPhone uses each line. To change the settings later, do the following:

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Cellular.

2. Do the following:

   - Tap Cellular Data, then choose a default line. To allow iPhone to use either line depending on coverage and availability, turn on Allow Cellular Data Switching.

     You may incur roaming charges if Data Roaming is on and you're outside the country or region covered by the carrier's network.

   - Tap Default Voice Line, then choose a line.

   - Below Cellular Plans, tap a line, then change settings such as Cellular Plan Label, Wi-Fi Calling (if available from your carrier), Calls on Other Devices, or SIM PIN. The label appears in Phone, Messages, and Contacts.

When using Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that is in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that is in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.

- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

  If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- If you make a phone call from another device, such as your Mac, by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- If you start an SMS/MMS Messages conversation using one line, you can't switch the conversation to your other line; you need to delete the conversation and start a new conversation using the other line. Also, you may incur additional charges if you send SMS/MMS attachments on the line that's not selected for cellular data.

- Instant Hotspot and Personal Hotspot use the line selected for cellular data.

Important: A SIM may be required to use cellular services when connecting to GSM networks and some CDMA networks. An iPhone activated on a CDMA wireless network can also use the SIM for connecting to a GSM network, primarily for international roaming. Your iPhone is subject to your wireless service provider's policies, which may include restrictions on switching service providers and roaming, even after the conclusion of any required minimum service contract. Contact your wireless service provider for more details. The availability of cellular capabilities depends on the wireless network, your iPhone model, and your location.

Consider applicable data, voice, and roaming charges when managing your cellular plans, especially when you travel with iPhone. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Some carriers let you unlock iPhone for use with another carrier (additional fees may apply). Contact your carrier for authorization and setup information. See the Apple Support article How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier.

Connect iPhone to the internet

Connect your iPhone to the internet by using an available Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings 🖼 > Wi-Fi, then turn on Wi-Fi.

2. Tap one of the following:

   - *A network:* Enter the password, if required.

   - *Other:* Joins a hidden network. Enter the name of the hidden network, security type, and password.

If 🕸 appears at the top of the screen, iPhone is connected to a Wi-Fi network. (To verify this, open Safari to view a webpage.) iPhone reconnects when you return to the same location.

Join a Personal Hotspot

If an iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) or another iPhone is sharing a Personal Hotspot, you can use its cellular internet connection.

Go to Settings 🖼 > Wi-Fi, then choose the name of the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.

If asked for a password on your iPhone, enter the password shown in Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot on the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.

Connect iPhone to a cellular network

Your iPhone automatically connects to your carrier's cellular data network if a Wi-Fi network isn't available. If iPhone doesn't connect, check the following:

1. Verify that your SIM is activated and unlocked. See Set up cellular service on iPhone.

2. Go to Settings 🖼 > Cellular.

3. Verify that Cellular Data is turned on. On models with Dual SIM, tap Cellular Data, then verify the selected line. (You can choose only one line for cellular data.)

When you need an internet connection, iPhone does the following, in order, until the connection is made:

- Tries to connect to the most recently used available Wi-Fi network

- Shows a list of Wi-Fi networks in range and connects to the one you choose

- Connects to your carrier's cellular data network

  Note: If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, apps and services may transfer data over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. Contact your carrier for information about your cellular data plan rates. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Apple ID and iCloud

Manage Apple ID settings on iPhone

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services such as the App Store, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

Sign in with your Apple ID

If you didn't sign in during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings 🔘.

2. Tap Sign in to your iPhone.

3. Enter your Apple ID and password.

   If you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one.

4. If you protect your account with two-factor authentication, enter the six-digit verification code.

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the Recover your Apple ID website.

Change your Apple ID settings

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*].

2. Do any of the following:

   - Update your contact information

   - Change your password

   - Add or remove Account Recovery Contacts

   - View and manage your subscriptions

   - Update your payment methods or billing address

   - Manage Family Sharing

How to use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud securely stores your photos, videos, documents, backups and more—and keeps them updated across all your devices—automatically. With iCloud, you can also share photos, calendars, notes, folders, files, and more with friends and family. iCloud provides you with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can subscribe to iCloud+.

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud and its features varies by country or region.

Change your iCloud settings

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud.

2. Do any of the following:

    - See your iCloud storage status.

    - Turn on the features you want to use, such as Photos, Mail, Contacts, and Messages.

For information on how to customize iCloud features on your other devices, see Set up iCloud and change settings on all your devices in the iCloud User Guide.

Ways to use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud can keep your iPhone backed up automatically. See Back up iPhone.

You can also keep the following information stored in iCloud and kept up to date across your iPhone and other Apple devices:

- iCloud Mail

- Contacts, Calendars, Notes, and Reminders

- Messages threads; see Set up Messages on iPhone

- Photos and videos; see Use iCloud Photos on iPhone

- Files and documents; see Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

- Safari bookmarks and open tabs; see Bookmark webpages in Safari on iPhone and Use tabs in Safari on iPhone

- Passwords and payment methods; see Make your passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

- News, Stocks, and Weather preferences

- Home and Health data

- Voice memos

- Map favorites

- Data from compatible third party apps and games

You can also do the following:

- Share your photos and videos with the people you choose. See Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud.

- Share folders and documents with iCloud Drive. See Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone.

- Use Find My to locate a missing device or share locations with friends and family. See Locate a device in Find My on iPhone and Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone.

For additional storage and access to iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email and HomeKit Secure Video support you can subscribe to iCloud+.

You can also access your iCloud data on iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, your Windows computer, and iCloud.com. To learn more about the available features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone

iCloud+ is Apple's premium cloud subscription. It gives you more storage for your photos, files, and backups, plus additional features including iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, and HomeKit Secure Video support.

You can subscribe to iCloud+ or to Apple One, which includes iCloud+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Some iCloud+ features have minimum system requirements. The availability of iCloud+ and its features varies by country or region.

What's included with iCloud+

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can do the following on iPhone:

- Increase your iCloud storage plan; you can get 50 GB, 200 GB, or 2TB of storage.

- Create unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal inbox with Hide My Email. See Hide your personal email address in Safari on iPhone.

- Connect to virtually any network and browse with Safari in an even more secure and private way with Private Relay. See Turn on iCloud Private Relay on iPhone.

- Set up home security cameras with HomeKit Secure Video so you can view your footage from anywhere while keeping it private and secure. See Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone.

You can also use iCloud.com to add a custom email domain to iCloud Mail. See Customize your iCloud Mail domain and share with family in iCloud+ in the iCloud User Guide.

To learn more about iCloud+ features and how they work across all your devices, see the iCloud User Guide.

Upgrade, change, or cancel your iCloud+ subscription

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > iCloud.

2. Tap Manage Storage, tap Change Storage Plan, then select an option and follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: If you cancel your iCloud+ subscription, you lose access to the additional iCloud storage and iCloud+ features.

Share iCloud+

When you subscribe to iCloud+ or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share iCloud+ with up to five other family members.

If you join a family group that subscribes to iCloud+ or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing iCloud+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or leave or turn off Family Sharing. See Add or remove members from your Family Sharing group on iPhone.

Find settings on iPhone

In the Settings app 🔘, you can search for iPhone settings you want to change, such as your passcode, notification sounds, and more.

---

1. Tap Settings on the Home Screen (or in the App Library).

Tap Settings to change your iPhone settings (volume, screen brightness, and more).

2. Swipe down to reveal the search field, enter a term—"iCloud," for example—then tap a setting.

Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts

In addition to the apps that come with iPhone and that you use with iCloud, iPhone works with Microsoft Exchange and many of the most popular internet-based mail, contacts, and calendar services. You can set up accounts for these services.

Set up a mail account

1. Go to Settings > Mail > Accounts > Add Account.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap an email service—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your email account information.

   - Tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, then enter your information to set up a new account.

Set up a contacts account

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Contacts > Accounts > Add Account > Other.

2. Tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account (if your organization supports it), then enter your server and account information. See Use other contact accounts on iPhone.

Set up a calendar account

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account.

2. Tap Other, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a calendar account:* Tap Add CalDAV Account, then enter your server and account information; see Set up multiple calendars on iPhone.

   - *Subscribe to iCal (.ics) calendars:* Tap Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter the URL of the .ics file to subscribe to; or import an .ics file from Mail.

For information about setting up a Microsoft Exchange account in a corporate environment, see the Apple Support article Set up Exchange ActiveSync on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

If you turn on iCloud Keychain on your iPhone, your accounts stay up to date on all your devices that have iCloud Keychain turned on. See Use to iCloud Keychain to keep passwords, accounts, and more up to date with iCloud in the iCloud User Guide.

Learn the meaning of the iPhone status icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen provide information about iPhone. On an iPhone with Face ID, there are additional status icons at the top of Control Center.

Status icon	What it means
▁▃▅▇	**Cell signal** The number of bars indicates the signal strength of your cellular service. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears.
▁▃▅▇	**Dual cell signals** On models with Dual SIM, the upper row of bars indicates the signal strength of the line you use for cellular data. The lower row of bars indicates the signal strength of your other line. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears. To see the status icons with their corresponding cellular plan labels and carrier names, open Control Center.
✈	**Airplane mode** Airplane mode is on—you can't make phone calls, and other wireless functions may be disabled. See Choose iPhone settings for travel.
5G	**5G** Your carrier's 5G network is available, and supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.

Status icon	What it means
	5G+ Your carrier's 5G network with higher frequency is available, and supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G UW Your carrier's 5G network with higher frequency is available, and supported models can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article Use 5G with your iPhone.
	5G E Your carrier's 5G E network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (supported on iPhone 8 and later; not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
4G	**UMTS** Your carrier's 4G UMTS (GSM) or LTE network (depending on the carrier) is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
LTE	**LTE** Your carrier's LTE network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	UMTS/EV-DO Your carrier's 3G UMTS (GSM) or EV-DO (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
E	**EDGE** Your carrier's EDGE (GSM) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
GPRS	**GPRS/1xRTT** Your carrier's GPRS (GSM) or 1xRTT (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.
	Wi-Fi call iPhone is set up for Wi-Fi calling. iPhone also displays a carrier name next to the icon. See Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network.
	Wi-Fi iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. See Connect iPhone to a Wi-Fi network.
	Personal Hotspot iPhone is connected to the internet through the Personal Hotspot of another device. See Join a Personal Hotspot.
	Personal Hotspot Indicator A blue bubble or bar indicates iPhone is either providing a Personal Hotspot or Screen Mirroring, or an app like Maps is actively using your location. See Share your internet connection from iPhone and Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone.
	Call Indicator A green bubble or bar indicates iPhone is on a call.
	Recording Indicator A red bubble or bar indicates iPhone is either recording sound or recording your screen. See Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone.

Status icon	What it means
	Camera In Use Indicator A green indicator appears at the top of your screen whenever an app is using your camera. See Start a measurement.
	Microphone In Use Indicator An orange indicator appears at the top of your screen whenever an app is using your microphone. See Make a basic recording.
	CarPlay iPhone is connected to CarPlay. See Connect iPhone to CarPlay.
	Syncing iPhone is syncing with your computer. See Sync iPhone with your computer.
	Network activity Shows that there's network activity. Some third-party apps may also use it to show an active process.
	VPN iPhone is connected to a network using VPN.
	Call Forwarding Call Forwarding is set up. See Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone.
	TTY Software RTT / TTY or Hardware TTY is turned on. See Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone.
	Lock iPhone is locked. See Wake and unlock iPhone.
	Do Not Disturb Do Not Disturb is turned on. See Turn a Focus on or off on iPhone.
	Portrait orientation lock The iPhone screen is locked in portrait orientation. See Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone.
	Location Services An item is using Location Services. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.
	Alarm An alarm is set. See Set an alarm on iPhone.
	Headphones connected iPhone is paired with Bluetooth headphones that are turned on and within Bluetooth range. See Set up and listen to Bluetooth headphones.
	Bluetooth battery Shows the battery level of a paired Bluetooth device.
	Battery Shows the iPhone battery level. When the icon is yellow, Low Power Mode is on. See Monitor the iPhone battery level.
	Battery Charging Shows the iPhone battery is charging. See Monitor the iPhone battery level.
	AirPlay AirPlay is on. See Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone.
	Voice Control Voice Control is turned on in Settings > Accessibility, and Siri is ready for your requests. See Use Voice Control to interact with iPhone.

Status icon	What it means
	Siri Eyes Free Siri is available for your spoken requests in your car. See Use Siri in your car.

Charge and monitor the battery

Charge the iPhone battery

iPhone has an internal, lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which currently provides the best performance for your device. Compared with traditional battery technology, lithium-ion batteries are lighter, charge faster, last longer, and have a higher power density for more battery life. To understand how your battery works so you can get the most out of it, see the Apple Lithium-ion Batteries website.

About charging the battery

The battery icon in the top-right corner shows the battery level or charging status. When you're syncing or using iPhone, it may take longer to charge the battery.

If iPhone is very low on power, it may display an image of a nearly depleted battery, indicating that it needs to charge for up to 10 minutes before you can use it. If iPhone is extremely low on power when you begin to charge it, the display may be blank for up to 2 minutes before the low-battery image appears. See the Apple Support article If your iPhone or iPod touch won't charge.

Charge the battery

To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

- Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter (sold separately). See Power adapters for iPhone.
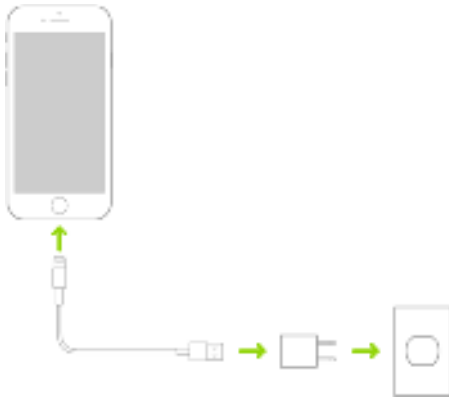
- Place iPhone 8 and later face up on MagSafe Charger or MagSafe Duo Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, MagSafe Duo Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.) See MagSafe chargers and battery packs for iPhone and Qi-certified wireless chargers for iPhone.

  Note: You can also use third-party power adapters and Qi-certified chargers that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. See "Charging" in Important safety information for iPhone.

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

  Make sure your computer is turned on—if iPhone is connected to a computer that's turned off, the battery may drain instead of charge. Look for ⚡ on the battery icon to make sure your iPhone is charging.

  Note: Don't try to charge your iPhone by connecting it to your keyboard, unless your keyboard has a high-power USB port.

Connecting iPhone to a power outlet or placing it on a wireless charger (on supported models) can start an iCloud backup or wireless computer syncing. See Back up iPhone and Sync iPhone with your computer.

WARNING: If you suspect there may be liquid in the charging port of iPhone, don't plug the charging cable into it. For information about exposure to liquid, and other important safety information about the battery and charging iPhone, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Turn on Low Power Mode

Using Low Power Mode can significantly increase the life of the battery charge. Switch to Low Power Mode when your iPhone battery is low, or when you don't have access to electrical power.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Battery.

2. Turn on Low Power Mode.

Low Power Mode limits background activity and optimizes performance for essential tasks like making and receiving calls, email, and messages; accessing the internet; and more.

Note: If your iPhone switches to Low Power Mode automatically, it switches back to normal power mode after charging to 80%. Your iPhone might perform some tasks more slowly when in Low Power Mode.

Optimize iPhone battery charging

iPhone has a setting that helps slow the rate of your battery's aging by reducing the time it spends fully charged. This setting uses machine learning to understand your daily charging routine, then waits to finish charging past 80% until you need it.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Battery, then tap Battery Health.

2. Turn on Optimized Battery Charging.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

Monitor the iPhone battery level

There are several ways to keep track of the battery level of your iPhone.

Show the battery level remaining in the status bar

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down from the top-right corner.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Go to Settings 🔘 > Battery, then turn on Battery Percentage.

Add a Batteries widget to your Home Screen

You can add a Batteries widget to your Home Screen to keep track of the battery levels of your iPhone and its accessories (including AirPods, Apple Pencil, and more).

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.

2. Tap ▦ at the top of the screen, then scroll down and tap Batteries.

3. Swipe left and right through the widgets to view the size options.

   The different sizes display different information.

4. When you see the size you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

   See Add widgets on iPhone.

View your battery usage information

Go to Settings ⚙ > Battery.

Information about your battery usage and activity appears for the last 24 hours and up to the last 10 days.

- *Insights and suggestions:* You might see insights about conditions or usage patterns that cause iPhone to consume energy. You might also see suggestions for lowering energy consumption. If a suggestion appears, you can tap it to go to the corresponding setting.

- *Last Charged:* Indicates how fully the battery was last charged and the time it was disconnected.

- *Battery Level graph (in Last 24 Hours):* Shows the battery level, charging intervals, and periods when iPhone was in Low Power Mode or the battery was critically low.

- *Battery Usage graph (in Last 10 Days):* Shows the percentage of battery used each day.

- *Activity graph:* Shows activity over time, split by whether the screen was on or off.

- *Screen On and Screen Off:* Shows total activity for the selected time interval, for when the screen was on and when it was off. The Last 10 Days view shows the average per day.

- *Battery Usage by App:* Shows the proportion of the battery used by each app in the selected time interval.

- *Activity by App:* Shows the amount of time each app was used in the selected time interval.

Note: To see battery information for a specific hour or day, tap that time interval in the graph. To deselect it, tap outside the graph.

Check your battery's health

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Battery.

2. Tap Battery Health.

   iPhone displays information about your battery's capacity, peak performance, and whether your battery needs to be serviced.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the Battery Service and Recycling website.

To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article iPhone Battery and Performance.

Download or bookmark the iPhone User Guide

You can view the iPhone User Guide in the Safari app 🧭, or download it to the Books app 📚 so you can read it even when you're offline.

View the user guide in Safari

In Safari, go to https://support.apple.com/guide/iphone.

To view the user guide in a different language, scroll down to the bottom of the page, tap the country or region link (United States, for example), then choose a country or region.

💡 **Tip:** For quick access, add the guide as a shortcut on your Home Screen or as a bookmark in Safari. Tap 🔗, then choose any of the following:

- *Add to Home Screen:* The shortcut appears as a new icon on the Home Screen.

- *Add Bookmark:* The bookmark appears when you tap 📖 in Safari.

Download the user guide from Apple Books

If you download the guide from Apple Books (where available), you can read it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.

1. Open the Books app 📚.

2. Tap Search, then enter "iPhone User Guide."

3. Tap Get, then wait for the book to download.

See Read books in the Books app on iPhone.

Learn gestures for iPhone

Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone
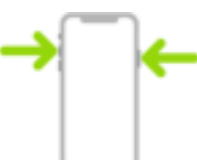
Control iPhone and its apps using a few simple gestures—tap, touch and hold, swipe, scroll, and zoom.

Symbol	Gesture
	Tap. Touch one finger lightly on the screen.
	Touch and hold. Touch and hold items in an app or in Control Center to preview contents and perform quick actions. On the Home Screen or in the App Library, touch and hold an app icon briefly to open a quick actions menu.
	Swipe. Move one finger across the screen quickly.
	Scroll. Move one finger across the screen without lifting. For example, in Photos, you can drag a list up or down to see more. Swipe to scroll quickly; touch the screen to stop scrolling.
	Zoom. Place two fingers on the screen near each other. Spread them apart to zoom in, or move them toward each other to zoom out. You can also double-tap a photo or webpage to zoom in, and double-tap again to zoom out. In Maps, double-tap and hold, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out.

Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Here's a handy reference to the gestures you use for interacting with an iPhone that has Face ID.

Gesture	Description
	Go Home. Swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen to return to the Home Screen at any time. See Open apps on iPhone.
	Quickly access controls. Swipe down from the top-right corner to open Control Center; touch and hold a control to reveal more options. To add or remove controls, go to Settings > Control Center. See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.

Gesture	Description
	Open the App Switcher. Swipe up from the bottom edge, pause in the center of the screen, then lift your finger. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	Switch between open apps. Swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen to quickly switch between open apps. See Switch between open apps on iPhone.
	Ask Siri. Just say, "Hey Siri." Or hold down the side button and make your request. Siri listens until you release the button. See Ask Siri on iPhone.
	Use Apple Pay. Double-click the side button to display your default credit card, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID. See Make contactless payments using Apple Pay on iPhone.
	Use Accessibility Shortcut. Triple-click the side button. See Use accessibility shortcuts on iPhone.
	Take a screenshot. Simultaneously press and quickly release the side button and volume up button. See Take a screenshot or screen recording on iPhone.
	Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India). Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag Emergency SOS. See Use Emergency SOS (in all countries or regions except India).
	Use Emergency SOS (in India). Triple-click the side button. If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag Emergency SOS. See Use Emergency SOS (India).

Gesture	Description
	Turn off. Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider to power off. Or go to Settings > General > Shut Down. See Turn off iPhone.
	Force restart. Press and release the volume up button, press and release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears. See Force restart iPhone.

Basics

Adjust the volume on iPhone

When you're on the phone or listening to songs, movies, or other media on iPhone, you can use the buttons on the side of iPhone to adjust the audio volume. Otherwise, the buttons control the volume for the ringer, alerts, and other sound effects. You can also use Siri to turn the volume up or down.

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Turn up the volume" or "Turn down the volume." Learn how to ask Siri.

WARNING: For information about avoiding hearing loss, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Lock the ringer and alert volumes in Settings

1. Go to Settings .

2. Tap Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).

3. Turn off Change with Buttons.

Adjust the volume in Control Center

When iPhone is locked or when you're using an app, you can adjust the volume in Control Center.

Open Control Center, then drag 🔊.

Temporarily silence calls, alerts, and notifications

Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb. (See Set Do Not Disturb .)

Put iPhone in silent mode

To put iPhone in silent mode 🔕, set the Ring/Silent switch so that the switch shows orange. To turn off silent mode, set the switch back.
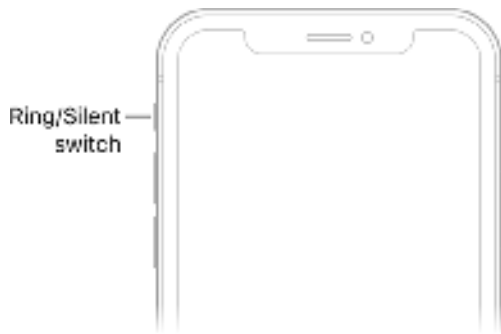
When silent mode is off, iPhone plays all sounds. When silent mode is on, iPhone doesn't ring or play alerts or other sound effects (but iPhone may still vibrate).

Important: Clock alarms, audio apps such as Music, and many games play sounds through the built-in speaker, even when silent mode is on. In some countries or regions, the sound effects for Camera, Voice Memos, and Emergency Alerts are played, even when the Ring/Silent switch is set to silent.

See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

On iPhone, there are several ways to protect your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphone audio. See Use headphone audio-level features on iPhone.

Use your apps

Open apps on iPhone

You can quickly open apps from your Home Screen pages or your App Library.

1. To go to the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

2. Swipe left to browse apps on other Home Screen pages.

3. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to see the App Library, where your apps are organized by category.

4. To open an app, tap its icon.

5. To return to the App Library, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

Find your apps in the App Library on iPhone

The App Library shows your apps organized into categories, such as Creativity, Social, and Entertainment. The apps you use most are near the top of the screen and at the top level of their categories, so you can easily locate and open them.

Note: Apps in the App Library are organized automatically. You can add apps in the App Library to the Home Screen, but you can't move them to another App Library category.

Find and open an app in the App Library

1. Go to the Home Screen, then swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to get to the App Library.

2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the app you're looking for. Or scroll up and down to browse the alphabetical list.

3. To open an app, tap it.

If a category has a few small app icons, you can tap them to expand the category and see all the apps in it.

Move an app from the App Library to the Home Screen

You can add an app in the App Library to the Home Screen, unless it's already there.

Touch and hold the app, then tap Add to Home Screen (available only if the app isn't already on the Home Screen).

The app appears on the Home Screen and in the App Library.

Switch between open apps on iPhone

Open the App Switcher to quickly switch from one open app to another on your iPhone. When you switch back, you can pick up right where you left off.

Use the App Switcher

1. To see all your open apps in the App Switcher, do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then pause in the center of the screen.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.

2. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use.

Switch between open apps

To quickly switch between open apps on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen.

Quit and reopen an app on iPhone

If an app isn't responding, you can quit it and then reopen it to try and resolve the issue. (Typically, there's no reason to quit an app; quitting it doesn't save battery power, for example.)

1. To quit the app, open the App Switcher, swipe right to find the app, then swipe up on the app.

2. To reopen the app, go to the Home Screen (or the App Library), then tap the app.

If quitting and reopening the app doesn't resolve the issue, try restarting iPhone.

Enter, select, and revise text

Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to enter and edit text. You can also use Magic Keyboard and dictation to enter text.

Enter text using the onscreen keyboard

In any app that allows text editing, open the onscreen keyboard by tapping a text field. Tap individual keys to type, or use QuickPath to type a word by sliding from one letter to the next without lifting your finger (not available for all languages). To end a word, lift your finger. You can use either method as you type, and even switch in the middle of a sentence. (If you tap 🔣 after sliding to type a word, it deletes the whole word.)
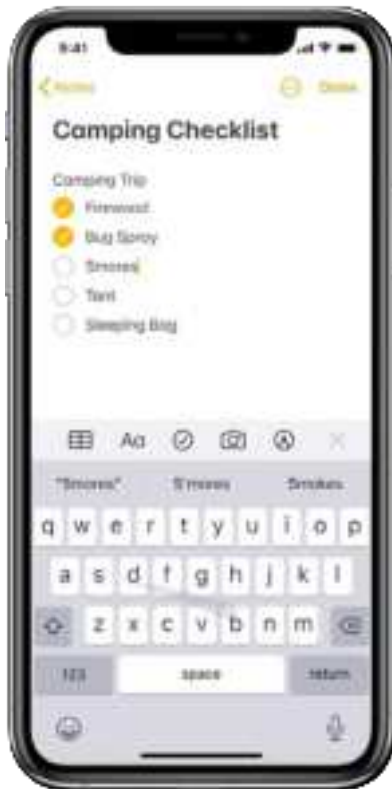
Note: As you slide to type, you see suggested alternatives to the word you're entering, rather than predictions for your next word.

While entering text, you can do any of the following:

- *Type uppercase letters:* Tap ⬆, or touch ⬆, then slide to a letter.

- *Turn on Caps Lock:* Double-tap ⬆.

- *Quickly end a sentence with a period and a space:* Double-tap the Space bar.

- *Correct spelling:* Tap a misspelled word (underlined in red) to see suggested corrections, then tap a suggestion to replace the word, or type the correction.

- *Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols:* Tap ⬚ or ⬚.

- *Undo the last edit:* Swipe left with three fingers, then tap Undo at the top of the screen.

- *Redo the last edit:* Swipe right with three fingers, then tap Redo at the top of the screen.

- *Enter emoji:* Tap 🔳 or 🔳 to switch to the emoji keyboard. You can search for an emoji by entering a commonly used word—such as "heart" or "smiley face"—in the search field above the emoji keyboard, then swipe through the emoji that appear. To return to the regular keyboard, tap ABC in the lower-left corner.

Turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad

1. Touch and hold the Space bar with one finger until the keyboard turns light gray.

2. Move the insertion point by dragging around the keyboard.

Drag around the keyboard to move the insertion point.

3. To select text, touch and hold the keyboard with a second finger, then adjust the selection by moving the first finger around the keyboard.

Enter accented letters or other characters while typing

While typing, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key, then slide to choose a variant.

You can also do any of the following:

- *On a Thai keyboard:* To choose native numbers, touch and hold the related Arabic number.

- *On a Chinese, Japanese, or Arabic keyboard:* Tap a suggested character or candidate at the top of the keyboard to enter it, or swipe left to see more candidates.

  Note: To view the full candidate list, tap the up arrow on the right. To return to the short list, tap the down arrow.

Move text

1. In a text editing app, select the text you want to move.

2. Touch and hold the selected text until it lifts up, then drag it to another location within the app.

   If you drag to the bottom or top of a long document, the document automatically scrolls.

Touch and hold the selection until it appears to rise.
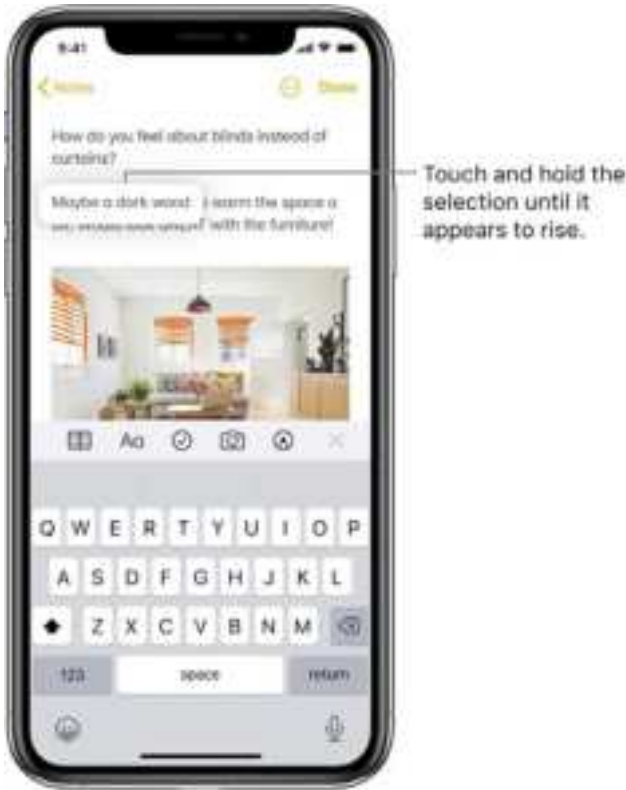
If you change your mind about moving the text, lift your finger before dragging, or drag the text off the screen.

Set typing options

You can turn on special typing features—such as predictive text and auto-correction—that assist you when you type on iPhone.

1. While typing text using the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold ⌨ or ⌨, then tap Keyboard Settings. You can also go to Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard.

2. In the list, turn the typing features (below All Keyboards) on or off.

Type with one hand

To make it easier to type with one hand, you can move the keys closer to your thumb—on all iPhone models except iPhone SE (1st generation).

1. Touch and hold ⌨ or ⌨.

2. Tap one of the keyboard layouts. (For example, choose ▦ to move the keyboard to the right side of the screen.)

   To center the keyboard again, tap the right or left edge of the keyboard.

Dictate text on iPhone

On iPhone, you can dictate text instead of typing it.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Turn on Dictation

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard.

2. Turn on Enable Dictation.

Dictate text

1. Tap 🎤 on the onscreen keyboard, then speak.

   If you don't see 🎤, make sure Enable Dictation is turned on in Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard.

2. When you finish, tap ▭.

Tap to begin dictation.
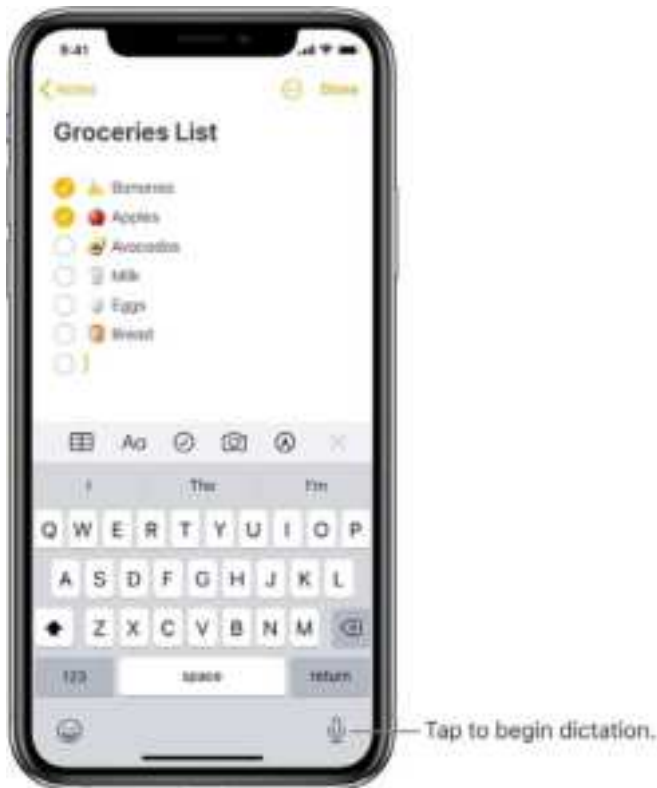
To insert text by dictating, tap to place the insertion point, then tap 🎙. You can also replace selected text by dictating.

Add punctuation or format text

While dictating text, say the punctuation or formatting.

For example, "Dear Mary comma the check is in the mail exclamation mark" becomes "Dear Mary, the check is in the mail!" Punctuation and formatting commands include the following:

- period

- comma

- exclamation point

- question mark

- dollar sign

- open parenthesis … close parenthesis

- quote … end quote

- new paragraph

- new line

- colon

- semicolon

- cap—to capitalize the next word

- caps on … caps off—to capitalize the first character of each word

- all caps—to make the next word all uppercase

- all caps on … all caps off—to make the enclosed words all uppercase

- no caps on … no caps off—to make the enclosed words all lowercase

- no space—to eliminate the space between two words (not available for all languages)

- no space on … no space off—to run a series of words together (not available for all languages)

- smiley—to insert :-)

- frowny—to insert :-(

- winky—to insert ;-)

- hash tag

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to select and edit text in text fields. You can also use an external keyboard or dictation.

Select and edit text

1. To select text, do any of the following:

   - *Select a word:* Double-tap with one finger.

   - *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap with one finger.

   - *Select a block of text:* Double-tap and hold the first word in the block, then drag to the last word.

2. After selecting the text you want to revise, you can type, or tap the selection to see editing options:

- *Cut:* Tap Cut or pinch closed with three fingers two times.

- *Copy:* Tap Copy or pinch closed with three fingers.

- *Paste:* Tap Paste or pinch open with three fingers.

- *Replace:* View suggested replacement text, or have Siri suggest alternative text.

- *B/I/U:* Format the selected text.

- ⯈: View more options.

Insert text by typing

1. Place the insertion point where you want to insert text by doing any of the following:

   - Tap where you want to add text.

   - Move the insertion point by dragging it.
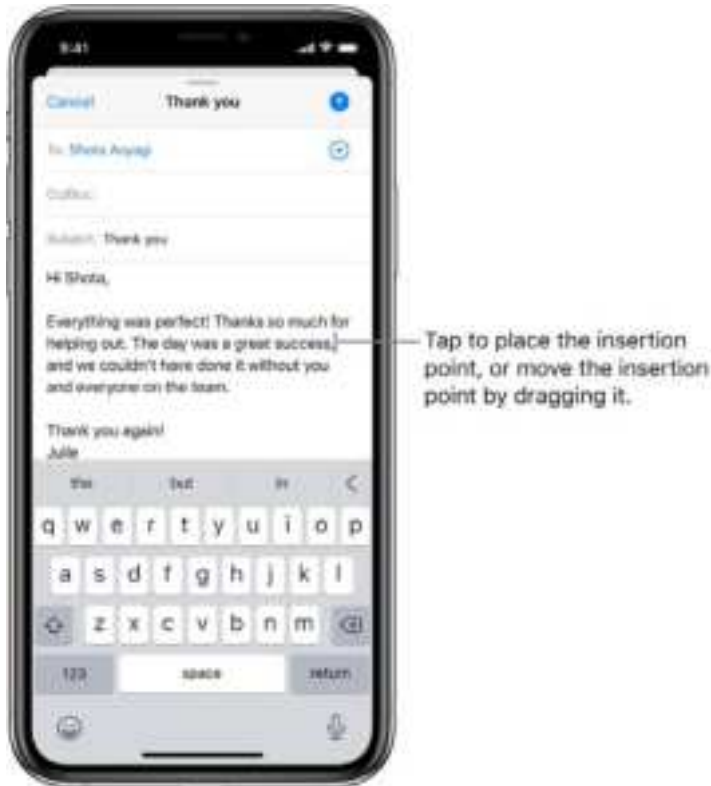
Note: To navigate a long document, touch and hold the right edge of the document, then drag the scroller to locate the text you want to revise.

2. Type the text you want to insert.

   You can also insert text you cut or copied from another place in the document. See Select and edit text.

With Universal Clipboard, you can cut or copy something on one Apple device and paste it to another. You can also move selected text within an app.

Use predictive text on iPhone

As you type text on the iPhone keyboard, you see predictions for your next word, emoji that could take the place of your word, and other suggestions based on your recent activity and information from your apps (not available for all languages). In Messages, for example, when you type something like:

- "I'm at" followed by a space, your current location appears as an option

- "My number is" followed by a space, your phone number appears as an option

Accept or reject a predictive text suggestion

While typing text, you can do either of the following:

- Accept a suggested word or emoji by tapping it; accept a highlighted suggestion by entering a space or punctuation.

  When you tap a suggested word, a space appears after the word. If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation, the space is deleted.

- Reject the suggestions by tapping your original word (shown as the predictive text option with quotation marks).
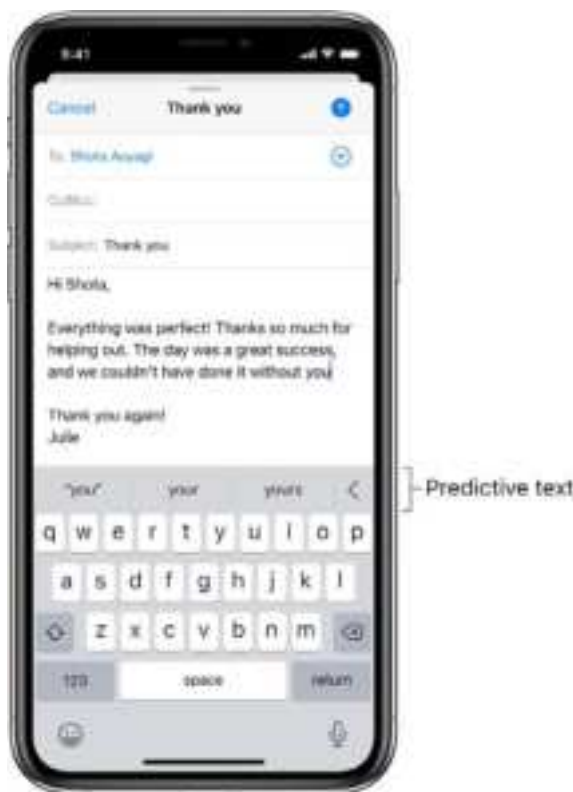
Turn off predictive text

1. While editing text, touch and hold 🌐 or 😀.

2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then turn off Predictive.

When you turn off predictive text, iPhone may still try to suggest corrections for misspelled words. To accept a correction, enter a space or punctuation, or tap Return. To reject a correction, tap the "x." If you reject the same suggestion a few times, iPhone stops suggesting it.

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" That one's already set up for you, but you can also add your own.

Create a text replacement

1. While typing in a text field, touch and hold 🌐 or 🌐.

2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then tap Text Replacement.

3. Tap ✛ at the top right.

4. Type a phrase in the Phrase field and the text shortcut you want to use for it in the Shortcut field.

Have a word or phrase you use and don't want it corrected?

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard, then tap Text Replacement.

2. Tap ✛ at the top right, then enter your word or phrase in the Phrase field, but leave the Shortcut field blank.

Create a text replacement for word and input pairs

When using certain Chinese or Japanese keyboards, you can create a text replacement for word and input pairs. The text replacement is added to your personal dictionary. When you type the text shortcut for a word or input while using a supported keyboard, the paired word or input is substituted for the typed shortcut.

Shortcuts are available for the following:

- *Simplified Chinese:* Pinyin

- *Traditional Chinese:* Pinyin and Zhuyin

- *Japanese:* Romaji and Kana

Use iCloud to keep your personal dictionary up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Reset your personal dictionary

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Reset.

2. Tap Reset Keyboard Dictionary.

   All custom words and shortcuts are deleted, and the keyboard dictionary returns to its default state.

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

You can turn typing features, such as spell checking, on or off; add keyboards for writing in different languages; and change the layout of your onscreen or wireless keyboard.

If you add keyboards for other languages, you can type in two languages without having to switch between keyboards. Your keyboard automatically switches between the two languages you use most often. (Not available for all languages.)

Add or remove a keyboard for another language

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > General > Keyboard.

2. Tap Keyboards, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a keyboard:* Tap Add New Keyboard, then choose a keyboard from the list. Repeat to add more keyboards.

   - *Remove a keyboard:* Tap Edit, tap 🔴 next to the keyboard you want to remove, tap Delete, then tap Done.

   - *Reorder your keyboard list:* Tap Edit, drag ≡ next to a keyboard to a new place in the list, then tap Done.

If you add a keyboard for a different language, the corresponding language is automatically added to the Preferred Language Order list. You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region. You can also reorder the list to change how apps and websites display text.

Switch to another keyboard

1. While typing text, touch and hold ⌨ or ⌨.

2. Tap the name of the keyboard you want to switch to.

You can also tap ⌨ or ⌨ to switch from one keyboard to another. Continue tapping to access other enabled keyboards.

You can also switch between Magic Keyboard and other keyboards.

Assign an alternative layout to a keyboard

You can use an alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your keyboard.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Keyboard > Keyboards.

2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then select an alternative layout from the list.

Multitask with Picture in Picture on iPhone

With Picture in Picture, you can use FaceTime or watch a video while you use other apps.

When using FaceTime or watching a video, tap ▨.

The video window scales down to a corner of your screen so you can see the Home Screen and open other apps. With the video window showing, you can do any of the following:

- *Resize the video window:* To make the small video window larger, pinch open. To shrink it again, pinch closed.

- *Show and hide controls:* Tap the video window.

- *Move the video window:* Drag it to a different corner of the screen.

- *Hide the video window:* Drag it off the left or right edge of the screen.

- *Close the video window:* Tap ▨.

- *Return to a full FaceTime or video screen:* Tap ▨ in the small video window.

Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen

The Lock Screen, which shows the current time and date and your most recent notifications, appears when you turn on or wake iPhone. From the Lock Screen, you can see notifications, open Camera and Control Center, get information from your favorite apps at a glance, and more.

Access features and information from the Lock Screen

You can quickly access useful features and information from the Lock Screen, even while iPhone is locked. From the Lock Screen, do any of the following:

- *Open Camera:* Swipe left. On supported models, you can touch and hold 📷, then lift your finger. (See iPhone camera basics.)

- *Open Control Center:* Swipe down from the top-right corner (on an iPhone with Face ID) or swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on other iPhone models). (See Use and customize Control Center on iPhone.)

- *See earlier notifications:* Swipe up from the center. (See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.)

- *View widgets:* Swipe right. (See Add widgets on iPhone.)

To choose what you can access from the Lock Screen, see Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen.

Show notification previews on the Lock Screen

1. Go to Settings 📱 > Notifications.

2. Tap Show Previews, then tap Always.

Notification previews include text from Messages, lines from Mail messages, and details about Calendar invitations. See View and respond to notifications on iPhone.

Perform quick actions on iPhone

On the Home Screen, in the App Library, in Control Center, and in apps, you can use quick actions menus, see previews, and more.

Perform quick actions from the Home Screen and App Library

On the Home Screen and in the App Library, touch and hold apps to open quick actions menus.

For example:

- Touch and hold Camera 📷, then choose Take Selfie.

- Touch and hold Maps 🗺, then choose Send My Location.

- Touch and hold Notes 📒, then choose New Note.

Note: If you touch and hold an app for too long before choosing a quick action, all of the apps begin to jiggle. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models), then try again.

See previews and other quick actions menus

- In Photos, touch and hold an image to preview it and see a list of options.

- In Mail, touch and hold a message in a mailbox to preview the message contents and see a list of options.

- Open Control Center, then touch and hold an item like Camera or the brightness control to see options.

- On the Lock Screen, touch and hold a notification to respond to it.

- When typing, touch and hold the Space bar with one finger to turn your keyboard into a trackpad.

Use iPhone to search

On iPhone, you can search for apps and contacts, content inside apps like Mail, Messages, and Photos, and even search for text in your photos. You can find and open webpages and find information about artists, entertainers, TV shows, and movies. You can also check stock and currency information and perform calculations, including unit conversions.

You can choose which apps you want to include in search results. Search offers suggestions based on your use of the apps and updates results as you type.

Choose which apps to include in Search

1. Go to Settings > Siri & Search.

2. Scroll down, tap an app, then turn Show in Search on or off.

Search with iPhone

1. Swipe down from the middle of the Home Screen.

2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Go.

- *Open a suggested app:* Tap it.

- *Get more information about a search suggestion:* Tap it, then tap one of the results to open it.

- *Start a new search:* Tap 🔳 in the search field.

Turn off Suggestions in Search

Go to Settings 🔲 > Siri & Search, then turn off Suggestions in Search.

Turn off Location Services for suggestions

1. Go to Settings 🔲 > Privacy > Location Services.

2. Tap System Services, then turn off Location-Based Suggestions.

Search in apps

Many apps include a search field or a search button so you can find something within the app. For example, in the Maps app, you can search for a specific location.

1. In an app, tap the search field or 🔍.

   If you don't see a search field or button, swipe down from the top.

2. Type your search, then tap Search.

Add a dictionary

On iPhone, you can add dictionaries, which can be used in searches.

1. Go to Settings 🔧 > General > Dictionary.

2. Select a dictionary.

Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send your photos, videos, websites, locations, and more to other nearby devices and Mac computers (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required). AirDrop transfers information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth—both must be turned on. To use AirDrop, you need to be signed in with your Apple ID. Transfers are encrypted for security.

Send an item using AirDrop

1. Open the item, then tap ⬆️ Share, AirDrop, ⬚, or another button that displays the app's sharing options.

2. Tap ▦ in the row of share options, then tap the profile picture of a nearby AirDrop user.

   💡 **Tip:** On iPhone 11 models and iPhone 12 models, point your iPhone in the direction of another iPhone 11 model or iPhone 12 model, then tap the profile picture of its user at the top of the screen.

If the person doesn't appear as a nearby AirDrop user, ask them to open Control Center on iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch and allow AirDrop to receive items. To send to someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

To send an item using a method other than AirDrop, choose the method—for example, Messages or Mail—from the row of sharing options (options vary by app). Siri may also suggest ways to share with the people you know by displaying their profile pictures and icons representing sharing methods.

You can also use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or a Mac. See Share passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone.

Allow others to send items to your iPhone using AirDrop

1. Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap ▦.

2. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone to choose who you want to receive items from.

   You can accept or decline each request as it arrives.

   Note: The Contacts Only option is available on devices with iOS 10, iPadOS, macOS 10.12, or later. If AirDrop is set to Contacts Only on your device with an earlier software version, select the Everyone option in Control Center to receive items by AirDrop. You can choose the Everyone option when using AirDrop and disable it when not in use.

Take a screenshot or screen recording on iPhone

You can take a picture of the screen, just as it appears, or a recording of actions on the screen, to share with others or use in documents.

Take a screenshot

1. Do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and then release the side button and volume up button.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Simultaneously press and then release the Home button and the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

2. Tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, then tap Done.

3. Choose Save to Photos, Save to Files, or Delete Screenshot.

   If you choose Save to Photos, you can view it in the Screenshots album in the Photos app, or in the All Photos album if iCloud Photos is turned on in Settings ▦ > Photos.

Save a full-page screenshot as a PDF

You can take a full-page, scrolling screenshot of a webpage, document, or email that exceeds the length of your iPhone screen, then save it as a PDF.

1. Do one of the following:

   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and then release the side button and volume up button.

   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Simultaneously press and then release the Home button and the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

2. Tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, then tap Full Page.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Save the screenshot:* Tap Done, choose Save PDF to Files, choose a location, then tap Save.

   - *Share the screenshot:* Tap 🖧, choose a sharing option (for example AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), enter any other requested information, then send the PDF.

Create a screen recording

You can create a screen recording and capture sound on your iPhone.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Control Center, then tap 👾 next to Screen Recording.

2. Open Control Center, tap 🎞️, then wait for the three-second countdown.

3. To stop recording, open Control Center, tap 🔴 or the red status bar at the top of the screen, then tap Stop.

Go to Photos 🌈, then select your screen recording.

Mark up files and photos

Draw in apps with Markup on iPhone

In supported apps such as Mail, Messages, Notes, and Books, you can annotate photos, screenshots, PDFs, and more using built-in drawing tools.

Draw with Markup

1. In a supported app, tap ▓ or Markup.

2. In the Markup toolbar, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool, then write or draw with your finger.

3. To hide the Markup toolbar, tap ▓ or Done.

While drawing, do any of the following:

- *Change the line weight:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then choose an option.

- *Change the opacity:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then drag the slider.

- *Change the color:* Tap ● in the toolbar, then choose a color.

- *Undo a mistake:* Tap ▓.

- *Draw a straight line:* Tap the ruler tool in the toolbar, then draw a line along the edge of the ruler.

    - To change the angle of the ruler, touch and hold the ruler with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.

    - To move the ruler without changing its angle, drag it with one finger.

    - To make the ruler disappear, tap the ruler tool in the toolbar again.

Erase a mistake

Tap the eraser tool in the Markup toolbar in a supported app, then do one of the following:

- *Erase with the pixel eraser:* Scrub over the mistake with your finger.

- *Erase with the object eraser:* Touch the object with your finger.

- *Switch between the pixel and the object erasers:* Tap the eraser tool again, then choose Pixel Eraser or Object Eraser.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ⬚ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

Move elements of your drawing

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler tools), then drag around the elements to make a selection.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⬚ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Lift your finger, then drag your selection to a new location.

💡 **Tip:** To mark up a screenshot right after you take it, tap the thumbnail that appears for a few moments in the bottom-left corner of the screen. (To share a screenshot after you mark it up, tap ⬚.)

Add text, shapes, and signatures with Markup on iPhone

In supported apps, you can use Markup to add text, speech bubbles, shapes, and signatures.

Add text

1. In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⬚, then tap Text.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ⬚ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Double-tap the text box.

3. Use the keyboard to enter text.

To change text after you add it, tap the text to select it, then do any of the following:

- *Change the font, size, or layout:* Tap ⬚ in the toolbar, then choose an option.

- *Delete, edit, or duplicate the text:* Tap Edit, then choose an option.

- *Move the text:* Drag it.

To hide the Markup toolbar when you finish, tap ▦ or Done.

Add a shape

In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⬚, then choose a shape.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ▦ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

To adjust the shape, do any of the following:

- *Move the shape:* Drag it.

- *Resize the shape:* Drag any blue dot along the shape's outline.

- *Change the outline color:* Tap a color in the color picker.

- *Fill the shape with color or change the line thickness:* Tap ▦, then choose an option.

- *Adjust the form of an arrow or speech bubble shape:* Drag a green dot.

- *Delete or duplicate a shape:* Tap it, then choose an option.

To hide the Markup toolbar when you finish, tap ▦ or Done.

Draw a shape

You can use Markup to draw geometrically perfect shapes—lines, arcs, and more—to use in diagrams and sketches.

1. In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ▦ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Draw a shape in one stroke with your finger, then pause.

   A perfect version of the shape snaps into place, replacing the drawing. (If you prefer to keep the freehand shape, tap ▦.)

The shapes you can draw include straight lines, arrows, arcs, continuous lines with 90-degree turns, squares, circles, rectangles, triangles, pentagons, chat bubbles, hearts, stars, and clouds.

Add your signature

1. In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⬚, then choose Signature.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ⬚ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Add a new signature:* Tap Add or Remove Signature, tap ⊕, then use your finger to sign your name.

     To use the signature, tap Done, or to draw a new one, tap Clear.

   - *Add an existing signature:* Tap the one you want.

     To see all of your signatures, scroll down the list.

3. Drag your signature where you want it.

To hide the Markup toolbar when you finish, tap ⬚ or Done.

Zoom in or magnify in Markup on iPhone

In Markup in supported apps, you can zoom in when you need to draw the details. Use the magnifier when you only need to see the details.

Zoom in

While using Markup in a supported app, pinch open so you can draw, adjust shapes, and more, up close.

To pan when you're zoomed in, drag two fingers. To zoom back out, pinch closed.

Magnify

In the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⬚, then tap Magnifier.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ⬚ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

To change the magnifier's characteristics, do any of the following:

- *Change the magnification level:* Drag the green dot on the magnifier.

- *Change the size of the magnifier:* Drag the blue dot on the magnifier.

- *Move the magnifier:* Drag it.

- *Change the outline thickness of the magnifier:* Tap ⬚, then choose an option.

- *Change the outline color of the magnifier:* Choose an option from the color picker.

- *Remove or duplicate the magnifier:* Tap its outline, then tap Delete or Duplicate.

To hide the Markup toolbar when you finish, tap 🔳 or Done.

Get information about your iPhone

View overall storage availability and storage used per app

Go to Settings ⚙️ > General > iPhone Storage.

See the Apple Support articles How to check the storage on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch and Manage your iCloud storage.

See battery usage

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Battery to see the elapsed time since iPhone has been charged and battery usage by app.

You can also display battery level as a percentage, turn Low Power Mode on or off, and check your battery's health.

See Monitor the iPhone battery level.

View call time and cellular usage

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Cellular. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

See more information about iPhone

Go to Settings ⚙️ > General > About. The items you can view include:

- Name

- iOS software version

- Model name

- Part and model numbers. To the right of Model, the part number appears. To see the model number, tap the part number.

- Serial number

- Cellular network

- Number of songs, videos, photos, and apps

- Capacity and available storage space

- Carrier settings. To the right of Carrier, the carrier settings version number appears. To see additional carrier-specific information, tap the version number. Contact your carrier for more details.

- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth addresses

- IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity)

- ICCID (Integrated Circuit Card Identifier, or Smart Card) for GSM networks

- MEID (Mobile Equipment Identifier) for CDMA networks

- Modem firmware

- Legal (including legal notices and license, warranty, and RF exposure information)

To copy the serial number and other identifiers, touch and hold the identifier until Copy appears.

To see regulatory marks, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.

On supported models, you can also find the IMEI on the SIM card tray and the model number in the SIM tray opening.

View or turn off diagnostic information

Go to Settings > Privacy > Analytics & Improvements.

To help Apple improve products and services, iPhone sends diagnostic and usage data. This data doesn't personally identify you, but may include location information.

View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

You can turn cellular data and roaming on or off, set which apps and services use cellular data, see cellular data usage, and set other cellular data options.

Note: For help with cellular network services, voicemail, and billing, contact your wireless service provider.

If iPhone is connected to the internet using the cellular data network, an icon identifying the cellular network appears in the status bar.

5G, LTE, 4G, and 3G service on GSM cellular networks support simultaneous voice and data communications. For all other cellular connections, you can't use internet services while you're talking on the phone unless iPhone also has a Wi-Fi connection to the internet. Depending on your network connection, you may not be able to receive calls while iPhone transfers data over the cellular network —when downloading a webpage, for example.

- *GSM networks:* On an EDGE or GPRS connection, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

- *CDMA networks:* On EV-DO connections, data transfers are paused when you answer incoming calls. On 1xRTT connections, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

Data transfer resumes when you end the call.

If Cellular Data is off, all data services—including email, web browsing, and push notifications—use Wi-Fi only. If Cellular Data is on, carrier charges may apply. For example, using certain features and services that transfer data, such as Siri and Messages, could result in charges to your data plan.

Choose cellular data options for data usage, performance, battery life, and more

To turn Cellular Data on or off, go to Settings ⚙ > Cellular.

To set options when Cellular Data is on, go to Settings > Cellular > Cellular Data Options, then do any of the following:

- *Reduce cellular usage:* Turn on Low Data Mode, or tap Data Mode, then choose Low Data Mode. This mode pauses automatic updates and background tasks when iPhone isn't connected to Wi-Fi.

- *Turn Data Roaming on or off:* Data Roaming permits internet access over a cellular data network when you're in a region not covered by your carrier's network. When you're traveling, you can turn off Data Roaming to avoid roaming charges.

Depending on your iPhone model, carrier, and region, the following options may be available:

- *Turn Voice Roaming on or off:* (CDMA) Turn Voice Roaming off to avoid charges from using other carrier's networks. When your carrier's network isn't available, iPhone won't have cellular (data or voice) service.

- *Enable or disable 4G/LTE:* Using 4G or LTE loads internet data faster in some cases but may decrease battery performance. There may be options for turning off 4G/LTE or for selecting Voice & Data (VoLTE) or Data Only.

On iPhone 12 models and later, you can do the following:

- *Enable Smart Data mode to optimize battery life:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose 5G Auto. In this mode, your iPhone automatically switches to LTE when 5G speeds don't provide noticeably better performance.

- *Use higher-quality video and FaceTime HD on 5G networks:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Allow More Data on 5G.

Set up a Personal Hotspot to begin sharing the cellular internet connection from iPhone

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Cellular, then turn on Cellular Data.

2. Tap Set up Personal Hotspot, then follow the instructions in Share your internet connection from iPhone.

Set cellular data use for apps and services

Go to Settings ⚙ > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off for any app (such as Maps) or service (such as Wi-Fi Assist) that can use cellular data.

If a setting is off, iPhone uses only Wi-Fi for that service.

Note: Wi-Fi Assist is on by default. If Wi-Fi connectivity is poor, Wi-Fi Assist automatically switches to cellular data to boost the signal. Because you stay connected to the internet over cellular when you have a poor Wi-Fi connection, you might use more cellular data, which may incur additional charges depending on your data plan. See the Apple Support article About Wi-Fi Assist.

Lock your SIM card

If your device uses a SIM card for phone calls or cellular data, you can lock the card with a personal identification number (PIN) to prevent others from using the card. Then, every time you restart your device or remove the SIM card, your card locks automatically, and you're required to enter your PIN. See Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad.

Choose iPhone settings for travel

When you travel with iPhone, choose settings that comply with airline requirements. Some airlines let you keep your iPhone turned on if you switch to airplane mode. By default, Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are disabled in airplane mode—you can't make calls, but you can listen to music, play games, watch videos, and use other apps that don't require network or phone connections.

To choose settings that minimize cellular charges when you travel, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Turn on airplane mode

Open Control Center, then tap 📶.

You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings ⚙. When airplane mode is on, 📶 appears in the status bar.

Turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode

If your airline allows it, you can use Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on airplane mode.

2. Tap 📶 to turn on Wi-Fi or 📶 to turn on Bluetooth.

If you turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in airplane mode, it may be on the next time you return to airplane mode. You can turn it off again in Control Center.

Tap to turn off Bluetooth in airplane mode.

Tap to turn off Wi-Fi in airplane mode.

Personalize your iPhone

Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

In Settings ⚙, change the sounds iPhone plays when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

On supported models, you feel a tap—called *haptic feedback*—after you perform some actions, such as when you touch and hold the Camera icon on the Home Screen.

Set sound and vibration options

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).

2. To set the volume for all sounds, drag the slider below Ringers and Alerts.

3. To set the tones and vibration patterns for sounds, tap a sound type, such as ringtone or text tone.

4. Do any of the following:

   - Choose a tone (scroll to see them all).

     Ringtones play for incoming calls, clock alarms, and the clock timer; text tones are used for text messages, new voicemail, and other alerts.

   - Tap Vibration, then choose a vibration pattern, or tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

Turn haptic feedback off or on

1. On supported models, go to Settings ⚙ > Sounds & Haptics.

2. Turn System Haptics off or on.

   When System Haptics is off, you won't hear or feel vibrations for incoming calls and alerts.

💡 **Tip:** If you're not receiving incoming calls and alerts when you expect them, open Control Center, then check whether Do Not Disturb is on. If 🌙 is highlighted, tap it to turn off Do Not Disturb. (When Do Not Disturb is on, 🌙 also appears in the status bar.)

Change the wallpaper on iPhone

On iPhone, choose an image or photo as wallpaper for the Lock Screen or Home Screen. You can choose from dynamic and still images.

Change the wallpaper

1. Go to Settings ![icon] > Wallpaper > Choose a New Wallpaper.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Choose a preset image from a group at the top of the screen (Dynamic, Stills, and so on).

     Wallpaper marked with ![icon] changes appearance when Dark Mode is turned on.

   - Select one of your own photos (tap an album, then tap the photo).

     To reposition your selected image, pinch open to zoom in on it, then drag the image with your finger to move it. Pinch closed to zoom back out.

   - Tap ![icon] to turn on Perspective Zoom (available with some wallpaper choices), which makes your wallpaper seem to "move" when you change your viewing angle.

     Note: The Perspective Zoom option doesn't appear if Reduce Motion is turned on (in Settings > Accessibility > Motion). See Reduce or stop the motion of screen elements on iPhone.

3. Tap Set, then choose one of the following:

    - Set Lock Screen

    - Set Home Screen

    - Set Both

To turn on Perspective Zoom for wallpaper you've already set, go to Settings > Wallpaper, tap the image of the Lock Screen or Home Screen, then tap Perspective Zoom.

💡 **Tip:** You can set your wallpaper to change automatically by creating a personal automation in the Shortcuts app. Set a schedule for your automation, then add the Set Wallpaper action to your automation. See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Set a Live Photo as wallpaper on iPhone

You can set a Live Photo as wallpaper on all iPhone models except iPhone SE (1st generation). You can play the Live Photo on your Lock Screen, but not on your Home Screen.

---

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Wallpaper > Choose a New Wallpaper.

2. Do one of the following:

    - Tap Live, then choose a Live Photo.

    - Tap your Live Photos album, then choose a Live Photo (you may need to wait for it to download).

3. Tap Set, then choose Set Lock Screen or Set Both.

To play the Live Photo, touch and hold the Lock Screen.

Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

On iPhone, you can make your screen dimmer or brighter (dimming the screen extends battery life). You can also adjust the screen brightness and color manually or automatically with Dark Mode, True Tone, and Night Shift.

Adjust the screen brightness manually

To make your iPhone screen dimmer or brighter, do one of the following:

- Open Control Center, then drag 🔆.

- Go to Settings ⚙️ > Display & Brightness, then drag the slider.

Adjust the screen brightness automatically

iPhone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Accessibility.

2. Tap Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

Turn Dark Mode on or off

Dark Mode gives the entire iPhone experience a dark color scheme that's perfect for low-light environments. With Dark Mode on, you can use your iPhone while, for example, reading in bed, without disturbing the person next to you.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold ☀, then tap ▦ to turn Dark Mode on or off.

- Go to Settings ⚙ > Display & Brightness, then select Dark to turn on Dark Mode, or select Light to turn it off.

Schedule Dark Mode to turn on and off automatically

You can turn on Dark Mode from Control Center or set it to turn on automatically at night (or on a custom schedule) in Settings.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Display & Brightness.

2. Turn on Automatic, then tap Options.

3. Select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Dark Mode to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

Turn Night Shift on or off

You can turn on Night Shift manually, which is helpful when you're in a darkened room during the day.

Open Control Center, touch and hold 🔆, then tap 🌙.

Schedule Night Shift to turn on and off automatically

Schedule Night Shift to shift the colors in your display to the warmer end of the spectrum at night and make viewing the screen easier on your eyes.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Display & Brightness > Night Shift.

2. Turn on Scheduled.

3. To adjust the color balance for Night Shift, drag the slider below Color Temperature toward the warmer or cooler end of the spectrum.

4. Tap From, then select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

   If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Night Shift to turn on and off.

   If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

   Note: The Sunset to Sunrise option isn't available if you turned off Location Services in Settings ⚙️ > Privacy, or if you turned off Setting Time Zone in Settings > Privacy > Location Services > System Services.

Turn True Tone on or off

On supported models, True Tone automatically adapts the color and intensity of the display to match the light in your environment.

Do any of the following:

- Open Control Center, touch and hold 🔆, then tap 🔆 to turn True Tone on or off.

- Go to Settings ⚙️ > Display & Brightness, then turn True Tone on or off.

Magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom

You can see larger onscreen controls on an iPhone with Display Zoom.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Display & Brightness.

2. Tap View (below Display Zoom).

3. Select Zoomed, then tap Set.

For additional zoom features, see Zoom in on the iPhone screen.

Change the name of your iPhone

You can change the name of your iPhone, which is used by iCloud, AirDrop, your Personal Hotspot, and your computer.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > General > About > Name.

2. Tap 🔘, enter a new name, then tap Done.

Change the date and time on iPhone

By default, the date and time, visible on the Lock Screen, are set automatically based on your location. If you want to change them—for example, when you're traveling—you can adjust them.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > General > Date & Time.

2. Turn on any of the following:

    - *Set Automatically:* iPhone gets the correct time over the network and updates it for the time zone you're in. Some networks don't support network time, so in some countries or regions, iPhone may not be able to automatically determine the local time.

    - *24-Hour Time:* (not available in all countries or regions) iPhone displays the hours from 0 to 23.

To change the default date and time, turn off Set Automatically, then change the date and time displayed.

Change the language and region on iPhone

You choose the language and region of your iPhone during setup. If you travel or move, you can change the language or region.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Language & Region.

2. Set the following:

    - The language for iPhone

    - The region

    - The calendar format

    - The temperature unit (Celsius or Fahrenheit)

3. To add another language and keyboard to your iPhone, tap Add Language, then select a language.

    See Add or change keyboards on iPhone.

Customize the Home Screen

Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

You can organize your apps into folders to make them easier to find on your Home Screen pages.

Create folders

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.

2. To create a folder, drag an app onto another app.

3. Drag other apps into the folder.

   You can have multiple pages of apps in the folder.

4. To rename the folder, touch and hold it, tap Rename, then enter a new name.

   (If the apps begin to jiggle, tap the Home Screen background and try again.)

5. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap the Home Screen background twice.

To delete a folder, tap the folder to open it, then drag all the apps out of it. The folder is automatically deleted.

Note: Organizing your apps on the Home Screen doesn't affect the organization of apps in the App Library.

Move an app from a folder to the Home Screen

You can move an app from a folder to the Home Screen to make it easier to locate and open.

1. Go to the Home Screen page with the folder that contains the app, then tap the folder to open it.

2. Touch and hold the app until the apps begin to jiggle.

3. Drag the app from the folder to the Home Screen.

Add widgets on iPhone

Widgets show you current information from your favorite apps at a glance—today's headlines, weather, calendar events, battery levels, and more. You can add widgets to your Home Screen to keep this information at your fingertips.

View widgets

To view widgets, swipe right from the left edge of the Home Screen or the Lock Screen, then scroll up and down.

Note: If the widgets don't appear when you swipe right on the Lock Screen, see View widgets when iPhone is locked.

Add a widget to your Home Screen

1. Go to the Home Screen page where you want to add the widget, then touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.

2. Tap   at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.

3. Scroll or search to find the widget you want, tap it, then swipe left and right through the size options.

   The different sizes display different information.

4. When you see the size you want, tap Add Widget.

5. While the apps are still jiggling, move the widget where you want it on the screen, then tap Done.

💡 **Tip:** A widget called a Smart Stack (one that has dots next to it) is a set of widgets that use information such as the time, your location, and activity to display the most relevant widget at the appropriate time in your day. You can add a Smart Stack to the Home Screen, then swipe through it to see the widgets it contains.

Edit a widget

You can customize most widgets so they display the information you want. For example, for a Mail widget, you can tap the mailbox shown in the widget, then choose a different mailbox so the messages in that mailbox are displayed in the widget. Or you can customize a Smart Stack to rotate through its widgets based on things like your activity, the time of day, and so on.

1. On your Home Screen, touch and hold a widget to open a quick actions menu.

2. Tap Edit Widget if it appears (or Edit Stack, if it's a Smart Stack), then choose options.

   For example, you can edit a Weather widget to see the forecast for your location or a different area. For a Smart Stack, you can turn Smart Rotate off or on.

3. Tap Done.

Edit a Smart Stack

Remove a widget from the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the widget to open the quick actions menu.

2. Tap Remove Widget (or Remove Stack), then tap Remove.

View widgets when iPhone is locked

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).

2. Enter your passcode.

3. Turn on Today View and Search (below Allow Access When Locked).

Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen on iPhone

You can change the layout of your Home Screen—move apps around or drag them to other Home Screen pages, temporarily hide Home Screen pages, change where new apps get downloaded, and more.

Move apps and widgets around on your iPhone

1. Touch and hold any app on the Home Screen, then tap Edit Home Screen.

   The apps begin to jiggle.

2. Drag an app to one of the following locations:

   - Another location on the same page

   - The Dock at the bottom of the screen

   - Another Home Screen page

   Drag the app to the right edge of the screen. You might need to wait a second for the new page to appear. The dots above the Dock show how many pages you have and which one you're viewing.
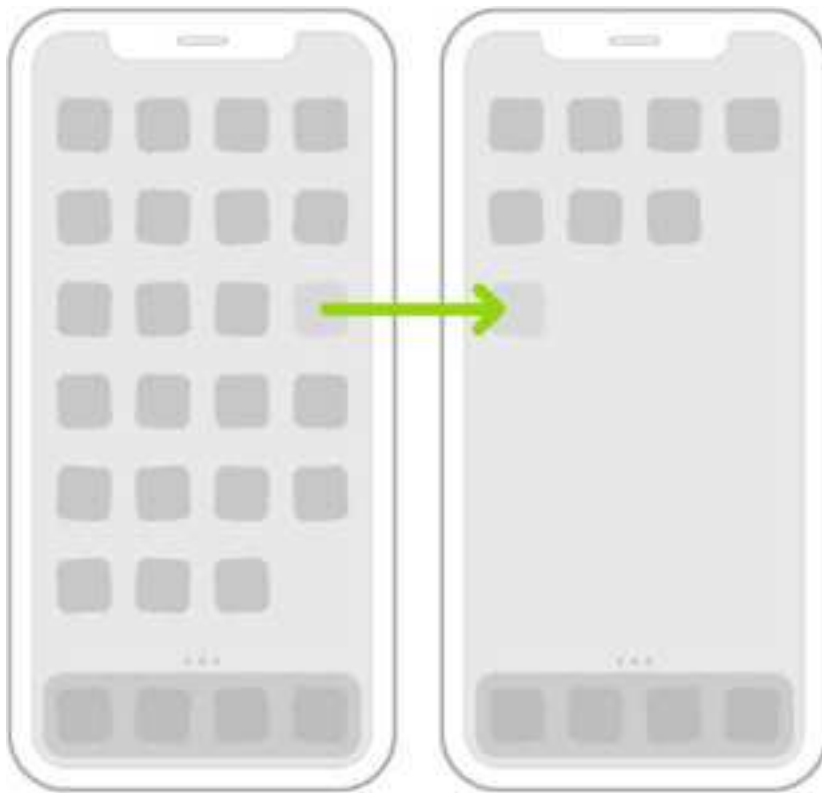
3. When you're finished, press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button) or tap Done (on other iPhone models).

Hide and show Home Screen pages

Because you can find all of your apps in the App Library, you might not need as many Home Screen pages for apps. You can hide some Home Screen pages, which brings the App Library closer to your first Home Screen page. (When you want to see the hidden pages again, you can show them.)

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.

2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

   Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

3. To hide pages, tap to remove the checkmarks.

   To show hidden pages, tap to add the checkmarks.

4. Tap Done twice (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button twice (on other iPhone models).

With the extra Home Screen pages hidden, you can go from the first page of the Home Screen to the App Library (and back) with only one or two swipes.

Note: When Home Screen pages are hidden, new apps you download from the App Store may be added to the App Library instead of the Home Screen.

Reorder Home Screen pages

If you have multiple Home Screen pages, you change their order. For example, you can gather together your favorite apps on one Home Screen page, and then make that your first Home Screen page.

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.

2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

   Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

3. To move each Home Screen page, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new position.

4. Tap Done twice (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button twice (on other iPhone models).

Change where new apps get downloaded

When you download new apps from the App Store, you can add them to the Home Screen and the App Library, or just the App Library.

1. Go to Settings 🔲 > Home Screen & Dock.

2. Choose whether to add new apps to both your Home Screen and App Library, or to the App Library only.

Note: To have app notification badges appear on apps in the App Library, turn on Show in App Library.

Reset the Home Screen and apps to their original layout

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.

2. Tap Reset, tap Reset Home Screen Layout, then tap Reset Home Screen.

   Any folders you've created are removed, and apps you've downloaded are arranged alphabetically after apps that came with your iPhone.

Remove apps from iPhone

You can easily remove apps from your iPhone. If you change your mind, you can download the apps again later.

Remove apps

Do any of the following:

- *Remove an app from the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app on the Home Screen, tap Remove App, then tap Remove from Home Screen to keep it in the App Library, or tap Delete App to delete it from iPhone.

- *Delete an app from the App Library and Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app in the App Library, tap Delete App, then tap Delete. (See Find your apps in the App Library.)

If you change your mind, you can redownload apps you've removed.

In addition to removing third-party apps from the Home Screen, you can remove the following built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone:

- Books

- Calculator

- Calendar

- Compass

- Contacts (Contact information remains available through Phone, Messages, Mail, FaceTime, and other apps. To remove a contact, you must restore Contacts.)

- FaceTime

- [Files](#)

- [Home](#)

- [iTunes Store](#)

- [Mail](#)

- [Maps](#)

- [Measure](#)

- [Music](#)

- [News](#)

- [Notes](#)

- [Podcasts](#)

- [Reminders](#)

- [Shortcuts](#)

- [Stocks](#)

- [Tips](#)

- [Translate](#)

- [TV](#)

- [Voice Memos](#)

- [Watch](#)

- [Weather](#)

Note: When you remove a built-in app from your Home Screen, you also remove any related user data and configuration files. Removing built-in apps from your Home Screen can affect other system functionality. See the Apple Support article [Delete built-in Apple apps on your iOS 12, iOS 13, or iPadOS device or Apple Watch](#).

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Control Center on iPhone gives you instant access to useful controls—including airplane mode, Do Not Disturb, a flashlight, volume, screen brightness—and apps.

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge. To close Control Center, swipe up from the bottom.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Swipe up from the bottom. To close Control Center, swipe down or press the Home button.

Access more controls in Control Center

Many controls offer additional options. To see available options, touch and hold a control. For example, you can do the following in Control Center:

- Touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap ▦ to open the AirDrop options.

- Touch and hold ▧ to take a selfie, take a photo, or record a video.

Touch and hold to
see Camera options.

Add and organize controls

You can customize Control Center by adding more controls and shortcuts to many apps, such as Calculator, Notes, Voice Memos, and more.

1. Go to Settings ▦ > Control Center.

2. To add or remove controls, tap ▦ or ▦ next to a control.

3. To rearrange controls, touch ☰ next to a control, then drag it to a new position.

Temporarily disconnect from a Wi-Fi network

In Control Center, tap 🛜; to reconnect, tap it again.

To see the name of the connected Wi-Fi network, touch and hold 🛜.

Because Wi-Fi isn't turned off when you disconnect from a network, AirPlay and AirDrop still work, and iPhone joins known networks when you change locations or restart iPhone. To turn off Wi-Fi, go to Settings 🔘 > Wi-Fi. (To turn on Wi-Fi again in Control Center, tap 🛜.) For information about turning Wi-Fi on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Temporarily disconnect from Bluetooth devices

In Control Center, tap ❊; to allow connections, tap the button again.

Because Bluetooth isn't turned off when you disconnect from devices, location accuracy and other services are still enabled. To turn off Bluetooth, go to Settings 🔘 > Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth. To turn on Bluetooth again in Control Center, tap ❊. For information about turning Bluetooth on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Turn off access to Control Center in apps

Go to Settings 🔘 > Control Center, then turn off Access Within Apps.

Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone

Many apps give you a different view when you rotate iPhone.

Lock or unlock the screen orientation

You can lock the screen orientation so that it doesn't change when you rotate iPhone.

Open Control Center, then tap 🔒.

When the screen orientation is locked, 🔒 appears in the status bar (on supported models).

Set up Focus, notifications, and Do Not Disturb

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Notifications help you keep track of what's new—they let you know if you missed a call, if the date of an event moved, and more. You can customize your notification settings so you see only what's important to you.

Find your notifications in Notification Center

Unless you set a Focus, or silence notifications with Do Not Disturb, iPhone displays notifications as they arrive. If you don't read one right away, it's saved in Notification Center so you can check it later.

To see your notifications in Notification Center, do any of the following:

- *On the Lock Screen:* Swipe up from the middle of the screen.

- *On other screens:* Swipe down from the top center. Then you can scroll up to see older notifications, if there are any.

To close Notification Center, swipe up from the bottom with one finger or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

Show recent notifications on the Lock Screen

You can allow access to Notification Center on the Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).

2. Enter your passcode.

3. Scroll down and turn on Notification Center (below Allow Access When Locked).

Respond to notifications

When you have multiple notifications in Notification Center or on the Lock Screen, they're grouped by app, which makes them easier to view and manage. Notifications from some apps may also be grouped by organizing features within the app, such as by topic or thread. Grouped notifications appear as small stacks, with the most recent notification on top.

Do any of the following:

- To expand a group of notifications to see them individually, tap the group. To close the group, tap Show Less.

- Touch and hold a notification to view it and perform quick actions if the app offers them (on supported models).

- Tap a notification to open the app that it's from.

View, dismiss, clear, and mute notifications

When notifications appear on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *Handle a notification you receive while using another app:* Pull it down to view it, then swipe up to dismiss it.

- *Clear notifications:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, then tap Clear or Clear All.

- *Mute notifications for an app:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap an option to mute the app's notifications for an hour or a day. This sends them directly to Notification Center and prevents them from appearing on the Lock Screen, playing a sound, lighting up the screen, or presenting a banner.

  To see and hear these notifications again, swipe left on the notification in Notification Center, tap Options, then tap Unmute.

- *Turn off notifications for an app or notification group:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap Turn Off.

- *Change how an app displays notifications:* Swipe left on a notification, tap Options, then tap View Settings. See Change notification settings to learn about the settings you can change.

- *Clear all your notifications in Notification Center:* Go to Notification Center, tap 🔳, then tap Clear.

- *Silence all notifications:* Turn on Do Not Disturb. See Turn a Focus on or off on iPhone.

When you haven't used an app for a while, Siri suggests that you turn off notifications for that app.

Schedule a notification summary

When you set a Focus to concentrate on an activity, or silence notifications with Do Not Disturb, the delivery of your notifications is delayed. You can schedule times to receive a summary of all your notifications each day (for example, at the beginning and end of the day) so you can catch up on what you missed. The summary is personalized to you and ordered by priority based on how you use your apps, with the most relevant notifications at the top.

1. Go to Settings 🔧 > Notifications > Scheduled Summary, then turn on Scheduled Summary.

2. Set a time for your summary, then, if you want to receive another summary, tap Add Summary.

3. Tap Apps in Summary, then turn on the apps you want to include in your Notification Summary.

   Each app appears with a number showing the average number of notifications you receive each day from that app.

Change notification settings on iPhone

In Settings 🔧, choose which apps can send notifications, change the alert sound, set up location-based alerts, allow government alerts, and more.

Change notification settings

Most notification settings can be customized for each app. You can turn app notifications on or off, have notifications play a sound, choose how and where you want app notifications to appear when your device is unlocked, and more.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Notifications.

2. To choose when you want most notification previews to appear, tap Show Previews, select an option—Always, When Unlocked, or Never—then tap ⟨ at the top left.

   Previews can include things like text (from Messages and Mail) and invitation details (from Calendar). You can override this setting for individual apps.

3. Tap an app below Notification Style, then turn Allow Notifications on or off.

   If you turn on Allow Notifications, choose when you want the notifications delivered—immediately or in the scheduled notification summary.

   You can also set a notification banner style, sound, and badges for many apps.

4. Tap Notification Grouping, then choose how you want the notifications grouped:

   - *Automatic:* The notifications from the app are grouped according to organizing criteria within the app, such as by topic or thread.

   - *By App:* All the notifications from the app are grouped together.

   - *Off:* Turn off grouping.

To turn off notifications selectively for apps, go to Settings > Notifications > Siri Suggestions, then turn off any app.

When you use Focus, it delays the delivery of notifications on iPhone to prevent interruptions. You can schedule a time to receive a summary of the notifications you missed. See Schedule a notification summary.

Set up or turn off location-based alerts

Some apps use your location to send you relevant alerts based on where you are. For example, you might get a reminder to call someone when you get to a specific place or when you leave for your next location.

If you don't want to see these types of alerts, you can turn them off.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services.

2. Turn on Location Services.

3. Tap an app (if any appear in the list), then choose whether you want to share your location while using that app.

See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Get government alerts

In some countries or regions, you can turn on alerts in the Government Alerts list. For example, on iPhone in the United States, you can receive presidential alerts, and you can turn AMBER, Public Safety, and Emergency Alerts (which include both Severe and Extreme Imminent Threat alerts) on or off (they're on by default). On iPhone in Japan, you can receive Emergency Earthquake Alerts from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

1. Go to Settings 🔲 > Notifications.

2. Scroll down to the Government Alerts section, then turn on the ones you want.

Government alerts vary by carrier and iPhone model, and may not work under all conditions. See the Apple Support article About emergency and government alerts.

Set up Focus on iPhone

What is Focus?

Focus is a feature that helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. When you need to focus, or step away from your iPhone, Focus can temporarily silence all notifications—or allow only the notifications you want (for example, ones that match your task)—and let other people and apps know you're busy.

You can choose from a list of provided Focus options or create your own.

Note: To quickly silence all notifications, open Control Center, tap Focus, then turn on Do Not Disturb. Do Not Disturb and Do Not Disturb While Driving are now part of Focus.

Set up a Focus

When you want to concentrate on a specific activity, you can customize a provided Focus option—for example, Driving, Personal, Sleep, or Work—or create a Custom Focus. You can silence notifications or allow only notifications from the people and apps that match your Focus—for example, set up a Work Focus and allow only notifications from your coworkers and the apps you need for work.

Likewise, you can customize a Home Screen page that has only apps related to your Focus and make that page the only one accessible during your Focus.

1. Go to Settings 🔲 > Focus.

2. Tap a Focus, then follow the onscreen instructions.

3. Customize any of the following while setting up your Focus:

   - *Choose people you want to receive notifications from (if any) during this Focus:* Tap People or Add Person, select contacts, then tap Done.

   - *Choose whether you want to receive calls during this Focus:* Tap Calls From, then select an option—either Everyone, No One, Favorites, All Contacts, or Groups. To allow repeated calls (two or more calls from the same person within three minutes), turn on Allow Repeated Calls. Tap Done, then tap Allow People or Allow None at the bottom of the screen.

     Note: Regardless of your Focus settings, calls from your emergency contacts will always come through. See Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced.

   - *Choose apps you want to receive notifications from (if any) during this Focus:* Tap Apps or Add App, select apps, then tap Done.

   - *Choose whether you want to receive time-sensitive notifications during this Focus:* Turn on Time Sensitive, then tap Allow Apps or Allow None at the bottom of the screen.

   - *Tell apps that you've silenced notifications for this Focus:* Tap Focus Status, then turn on Share Focus Status. This lets people who send you a message see that you have notifications silenced.

   - *Choose the Home Screen pages you want to access (if any) during this Focus:* Tap Home Screen, turn on Custom Pages, select the Home Screen pages you want to use during this Focus, then tap Done.

     💡 **Tip:** You can move the apps for this Focus to one Home Screen page, then select that page.

   - *Allow silenced notifications to appear on the Lock Screen, or dim the Lock Screen:* Tap Lock Screen, then turn on Show On Lock Screen. You can also turn on Dim Lock Screen to dim the Lock Screen during this Focus.

When you set up a Sleep Focus, you can also change your next bedtime and wake up time, or adjust your sleep schedule by tapping Open Sleep in Health. See Set an alarm on iPhone or Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone.

To use a Focus after setting it up, you can either turn it on in Control Center, or schedule it to turn on automatically.

Create a Custom Focus

If you want to concentrate on an activity that's different from any of the provided Focus options, you can create a Custom Focus.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Focus.

2. Tap ➕ at the top right, then tap Custom.

3. Enter a name for your Focus, then press Return.

4. Choose a color and an icon to represent your Focus, then tap Next.

5. Customize any of the options listed in step 3 of Set up a Focus, above.

Keep your Focus settings up to date across all your Apple devices

You can use the same Focus settings on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Focus.

2. Turn on Share Across Devices.

Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced

You can allow sounds and vibrations from emergency contacts to come through even when your iPhone or notifications are silenced.

1. Open Contacts 📇.

2. Select a contact, then tap Edit.

3. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

   Or, create a Medical ID and identify an emergency contact.

Turn a Focus on or off on iPhone

To use a Focus, you can turn it on directly, either through Siri or in Control Center, or schedule it to turn on automatically.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Turn on Do Not Disturb," or "Turn off Do Not Disturb." Learn how to ask Siri.

Turn on a Focus in Control Center

1. Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to turn on (for example, Do Not Disturb).

   Note: If another Focus was already on, it turns off when you tap the new one.

2. To choose an ending point for the Focus, tap ▓, select an option (such as "For 1 hour" or "Until I leave this location"), then tap ▓ again.

When a Focus is on, its icon (for example, ▓ for Do Not Disturb) appears in the status bar and on the Lock Screen, and your status is automatically displayed in the Messages app. People who try to send you a message will see that you've silenced notifications, but they can still notify you if something is urgent.

Schedule a Focus to turn on automatically

You can schedule a Focus to turn on at certain times, when you're at a particular location, or when you open a specific app.

1. Go to Settings ▓ > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to schedule to turn on automatically.

2. Tap Add Schedule or Automation, then set the times, a location, or an app you want to activate this Focus.

3. To have this Focus turn on automatically based on signals like your location, app usage, and more, tap Smart Activation, turn on Smart Activation, then tap ▓ at the top.

Turn off a Focus

When you're finished with a Focus, you can quickly turn it off to allow notifications again. After you turn off a Focus, it still appears in Control Center and can be used again.

1. Do any of the following:

   - Touch and hold the Focus icon on the Lock Screen.

   - Open Control Center, then tap Focus.

2. Tap the Focus that's on to turn it off.

Delete a Focus

When you no longer need a Focus you set up, you can delete it.

1. Go to Settings > Focus.

2. Tap the Focus, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Delete Focus.

If you delete a provided Focus, you can get it back again by going to Settings > ▦ Focus, then tapping ﹢.

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Turning on the Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. When you turn it on, text messages and other notifications are silenced or limited. You can ask Siri to read replies to you, so you don't have to look at your iPhone. Incoming calls are allowed only when iPhone is connected to CarPlay—a car Bluetooth system—or a hands-free accessory.

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. The Driving Focus is not a substitute for following all the rules that prohibit distracted driving.

Set up the Driving Focus

You can set up the Driving Focus to activate automatically when you're in a moving car. (You can also turn it on manually in Control Center.)

1. Go to Settings ▦ > Focus, then tap Driving.

2. Tap Focus Status (below Options), then turn on Share Focus Status.

3. Tap Auto-Reply, then choose who should receive an auto-reply when the Driving Focus is on:

    - No one

    - Recents

    - Favorites

    - All Contacts

4. Tap While Driving (below Automation), then select when to activate Driving:

    - *Automatically:* When iPhone detects you might be driving.

    - *When Connected to Car Bluetooth:* When your iPhone is connected to a car's Bluetooth system.

    - *Manually:* When you turn it on in Control Center.

    - *Activate With CarPlay:* Automatically when iPhone is connected to CarPlay.

Get calls, messages, and notifications when you're a passenger

If you receive a Driving notification when you're in a car, but not driving (for example, when you're a passenger), you can turn it off.

Tap I'm Not Driving.

When the Driving Focus is on and you're the passenger in a moving car, you can receive calls, messages, and notifications.

App Store

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app 📱, you can discover new apps, read featured stories, and learn tips and tricks.

Note: You need an internet connection and an Apple ID to use the App Store. The availability of the App Store varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find apps

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Search the App Store for cooking apps" or "Get the Minecraft app." Learn how to ask Siri.

You can also tap any of the following:

- *Today:* Discover featured stories, apps, and in-app events.

- *Apps:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.

- *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.

Get the App Store widget

See stories, collections, and in-app events right on your Home Screen. See Add widgets on iPhone.

Get more info about an app

Tap an app to see the following information and more:

- Supported languages

- Compatibility with other Apple devices

- File size

- Screenshots or previews

- Game Center and Family Sharing support

- In-app events

- Ratings and reviews

- Privacy information; see Review the privacy practices of apps

Buy and download an app

1. To buy an app, tap the price. If the app is free, tap Get.

   If you see ⬚ instead of a price, you already purchased the app, and you can download it again without a charge.

2. If required, authenticate your Apple ID with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

While the app is downloading, its icon appears on the Home Screen with a progress indicator. You can also find the app in the App Library, in the Recently Added category.

Share or give an app

1. Tap the app to see its details.

2. Tap ⬚, then choose a sharing option or tap Gift App (not available for all apps).

Redeem or send an Apple gift card

1. Tap ⬚ or your profile picture at the top right.

2. Tap one of the following:

   - Redeem Gift Card or Code

   - Send Gift Card by Email

Use App Clips on iPhone

An App Clip is a small part of an app that lets you do a task quickly, like rent a bike, pay for parking, or order food. You can discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, and Messages, or in the real world through NFC tags, QR codes, and App Clip Codes—unique markers that take you to specific App Clips.

NFC integrated   Scan only
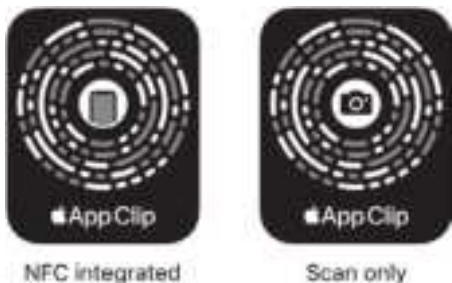
Get and use an App Clip

1. Get an App Clip from any of the following:

    *   *App Clip Code or QR code:* Scan the code using the iPhone camera or Code Scanner in Control Center.

    *   *NFC-integrated App Clip Code or NFC tag:* Hold iPhone (supported models) near the NFC tag.

    *   *Safari or Messages:* Tap the App Clip link.

    *   *Maps:* Tap the App Clip link on the information card (for supported locations).

2. When the App Clip appears on the screen, tap Open.

In supported App Clips, you can use Sign in with Apple, then make a payment using Apple Pay.

With some App Clips, you can tap the banner at the top of the screen to see the full app in the App Store.

Find an App Clip you recently used on iPhone

Go to the App Library, then tap Recently Added.

Remove App Clips

*   *Remove a specific App Clip:* In the App Library, tap Recently Added, then touch and hold the App Clip you want to delete.

*   *Remove all App Clips:* Go to Settings ⚙ > App Clips.

Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone

In the App Store app 🅰, you can subscribe to Apple Arcade to enjoy unlimited access to a curated collection of games on iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, and Apple TV.

You can subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, which includes Apple Arcade and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Subscribe to Apple Arcade

1. In the App Store, tap Arcade, then tap the subscription button.

2. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Share Apple Arcade

When you subscribe to Apple Arcade or Apple One Premier, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Arcade with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Arcade is available to them the first time they open the App Store app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Arcade or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Arcade with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Change or cancel your Apple Arcade subscription

Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Subscriptions, tap Apple Arcade, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you cancel your subscription, you can't play any Apple Arcade games, even if you downloaded them to your device. Delete the apps if you don't need them anymore.

You can resubscribe to play Apple Arcade games again and regain access to your gameplay data. If you wait too long, some of your gameplay data might not be supported after you resubscribe.

Play games on iPhone

In the App Store app 🅰, you can discover new games and play with your friends using Game Center.

Note: Game Center, Apple Arcade, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find and download games

1. Tap any of the following:

   - *Games:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.

   - *Arcade:* See the games available in Apple Arcade.

   - *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.

2. To buy a game, tap the price or, if the game is free, tap Get. If the game is included with your Apple Arcade subscription, tap Play.

   If you see 🟦 instead of a price, you already purchased the game, and you can download it again without a charge.

3. If required, authenticate your Apple ID with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

Play Apple Arcade games on your other Apple devices

All of the games in Apple Arcade on iPhone are also available in Apple Arcade on other devices. If you subscribe to Apple Arcade, you can access your game progress on devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

See the Apple Support article Access your Apple Arcade gameplay data on all of your devices.

Connect a wireless game controller to iPhone

See the Apple Support article Connect a wireless game controller to your Apple device.

Play with your friends in Game Center

You can send friend requests, manage your public profile, and track your high scores across your Apple devices using Game Center.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Game Center, then sign in with your Apple ID.

2. To create a Game Center profile, do any of the following:

   - *Choose a nickname:* Tap Nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions. Your friends see your nickname when you play games together.

   - *Personalize your profile picture:* Tap Edit at the top, then create a new Memoji, use an existing Memoji, or customize how your initials appear.

3. To add friends, tap Friends, tap Add Friends, then enter their phone number or Apple ID, or tap 🟦 to invite someone in your Contacts list.

   To accept a friend request, the recipient must click the link in the text message on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac that meets the minimum system requirements for Apple Arcade.

In your list of friends, tap a friend to see games they recently played and their achievements. You can also report a user for cheating, an inappropriate picture or nickname, or another problem. To remove a friend, tap Remove Friend.

Set Game Center restrictions

You can set restrictions for multiplayer games, adding friends, private messaging, and more.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

2. Tap Content Restrictions, scroll down to Game Center, then set restrictions.

Install and manage fonts on iPhone

You can download fonts from the App Store app 🔵, then use them in documents you create on iPhone.

---

1. After you download an app containing fonts from the App Store, open the app to install the fonts.

2. To manage installed fonts, go to Settings ⚙ > General, then tap Fonts.

Manage App Store purchases, subscriptions, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

In the App Store app 🔵, you can manage subscriptions and review and download purchases made by you or other family members. You can also set restrictions and customize your preferences for the App Store in Settings ⚙.

Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy for a child.

Find and download apps purchased by you or family members

1. Tap 🔵 or your profile picture at the top right, then tap Purchased.

2. If you set up Family Sharing, tap My Purchases or choose a family member to view their purchases.

   Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases. Purchases made with Family Sharing may not be accessible after the family member leaves the family group.

3. Find the app you want to download (if it's still available in the App Store), then tap ☁.

Change or cancel your App Store subscriptions

1. Tap ▓ or your profile picture at the top right, then tap Subscriptions.

    You may need to sign in with your Apple ID.

2. Choose a subscription, then do any of the following:

    -   Change or cancel an existing subscription.

    -   Resubscribe to an expired subscription.

    -   Share an eligible App Store subscription with other family members in your Family Sharing group.

Change your App Store settings

Go to Settings ▓ > App Store, then do any of the following:

-   *Automatically download apps purchased on your other Apple devices:* Below Automatic Downloads, turn on Apps.

-   *Automatically update apps:* Turn on App Updates.

-   *Control the use of cellular data for app downloads:* To allow downloads to use cellular data, turn on Automatic Downloads (below Cellular Data). To choose whether you want to be asked for permission for downloads over 200 MB or all apps, tap App Downloads.

-   *Automatically play app preview videos:* Turn on Video Autoplay.

-   *Automatically remove unused apps:* Turn on Offload Unused Apps. You can reinstall an app at any time if it's still available in the App Store.

Set content restrictions and prevent in-app purchases

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, do the following.

1. Go to Settings ▓ > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Content Restrictions.

2. Set restrictions such as the following:

    -   *iTunes & App Store Purchases:* Control app installations, app deletions, and in-app purchases.

    -   *Apps:* Restrict apps by age ratings.

    -   *App Clips:* Prevent App Clips from opening.

Books

Buy books and audiobooks in Apple Books on iPhone

In the Books app 📙, you can find today's bestsellers, view top charts, and browse lists curated by Apple Books editors. After you select a book or audiobook, you can read or listen to it right in the app.

1. Open Books, then tap Book Store or Audiobooks to browse titles, or tap Search to look for a specific title, author, or genre.

2. Tap a book cover to see more details, read a sample, listen to a preview, or mark as Want to Read.

3. Tap Buy to purchase a title, or tap Get to download a free title.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple ID.

Note: You can allow books and audiobooks to be downloaded automatically over your cellular network when you aren't connected to Wi-Fi. Go to Settings 📱 > Books, scroll to Cellular Data, tap Downloads, then tap Always Allow.

Read books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app 📙, use the Reading Now and Library tabs at the bottom of the screen to see the books you're reading, the books you want to read, your book collections, and more.

- *Reading Now:* Tap to access the books and audiobooks you're currently reading. Scroll down to see books and audiobooks you've added to your Want To Read collection and books you've sampled. You can also set daily reading goals and keep track of the books you finish throughout the year.

- *Library:* Tap to see all of the books, audiobooks, series, and PDFs you got from the Book Store or manually added to your library. You can tap Collections to see your books sorted into collections, such as Want to Read, My Samples, Audiobooks, and Finished.
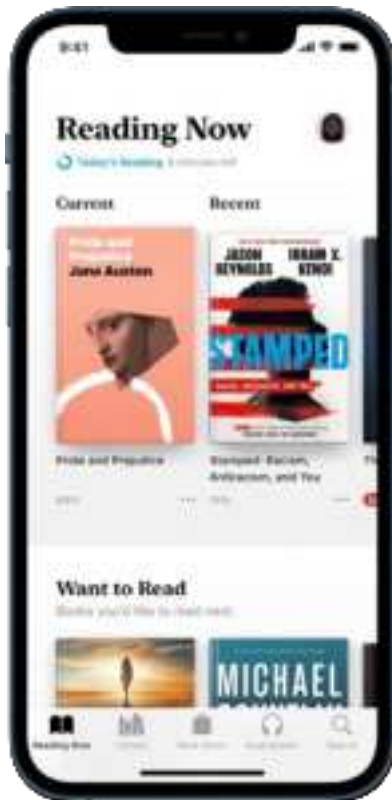
Read a book

Tap Reading Now or Library, then tap a cover to open a book. Use gestures and controls to navigate as follows:

- *Turn the page:* Tap the right side of the page or swipe right to left.

- *Go back to the previous page:* Tap the left side of the page or swipe left to right.

- *Go to a specific page:* Tap the page and move the slider at the bottom of the screen left or right. Or, tap ⊞ and enter a page number, then tap the page number in the search results.

- *Close a book:* Tap the center of the page to show the controls, then tap ⟲.

When you finish a book, personalized recommendations appear to help you discover your next read.

Change text and display appearance

Tap the page, tap ![icon], then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the screen brightness:* Drag the slider left or right.

- *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.

- *Change the font:* Tap Fonts to choose a different font.

- *Change the page background color:* Tap a circle.

- *Dim the screen when it's dark:* Turn Auto-Night Theme on to automatically change the page color and brightness when using Books in low-light conditions. (Not all books support Auto-Night Theme.)

- *Turn off pagination:* Turn Vertical Scrolling on to scroll continuously through a book or PDF.

Bookmark a page

When you close a book, your place is saved automatically—you don't need to add a bookmark. Bookmark pages you want to return to again.

Tap 🔖 to add a bookmark; tap it again to remove the bookmark.

To see all your bookmarks, tap ☰, then tap Bookmarks.

Highlight or underline text

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.

2. Tap Highlight, then tap 🖍 to choose a highlight color or to underline.

   To remove a highlight or underline, tap the text, then tap 🖍.

To see all of your highlights, tap ☰, then tap Notes.

Add a note

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.

2. Tap Note, use the keyboard to enter text, then tap Done.

To see all of your notes, tap ☰, then tap Notes. Swipe left on a note to delete it.

Share a selection

You can send text selections using AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or you can add the selection to Notes. If the book is from the Book Store, a link to the book is included with the selection. (Sharing may not be available in all countries or regions.)

1. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.

2. Tap Share, then choose a method.

You can also send a link to view the book in the Book Store. Tap any page, tap ☰, then tap 📖.

Access your books on all your devices

To keep your Books information updated across your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch, sign with the same Apple ID on each device, then do the following:

- *Sync Reading position, bookmarks, notes, and highlights:* Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on both iCloud Drive and Books.

- *Sync Reading Now, Library, and collections:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, and turn on both iCloud Drive and Books. Then go to Settings > Books, and turn on Reading Now.

Access your books on your Mac

To see your books, audiobooks, and PDFs on your Mac, choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 10.15 or later:* Open System Preferences, click Apple ID, select iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.

- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Open System Preferences, click iCloud, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.

To see your collections, bookmarks, notes, and highlights on your Mac, choose Books > Preferences, click General, then select "Sync collections, bookmarks, and highlights across devices."

Listen to audiobooks in Books on iPhone

Use the Books app 📙 to listen to audiobooks on your iPhone.

Play an audiobook

In Reading Now or in the Audiobooks collection in your Library, tap the audiobook cover, then do any of the following:

- *Skip forward or back:* Touch and hold the rounded arrows, slide and hold the book cover, or use external controls such as headphones or car controls.

  Note: To change the number of seconds that skipping advances, go to Settings > Books, then scroll down to Audiobooks.

- *Speed it up, or slow it down:* Tap the playback speed in the lower-left corner to choose a different speed.

- *Set a sleep timer:* Tap , then choose a duration.

- *Go to a chapter:* Tap , then tap a chapter.

  Note: Some audiobooks refer to chapters as *tracks*, or don't define chapters.

- *Go to a specific time:* Drag the playhead, directly below the audiobook cover. The point where you started listening is marked with a gray circle on the timeline. Tap the circle to jump back to that spot.

If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, audiobooks play over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Set reading goals in Books on iPhone

The Books app 📙 helps you keep track of how many minutes you read every day, and how many books and audiobooks you finish each year. You can customize your goals to spend more time reading, set new reading streaks, and share your achievements with friends.
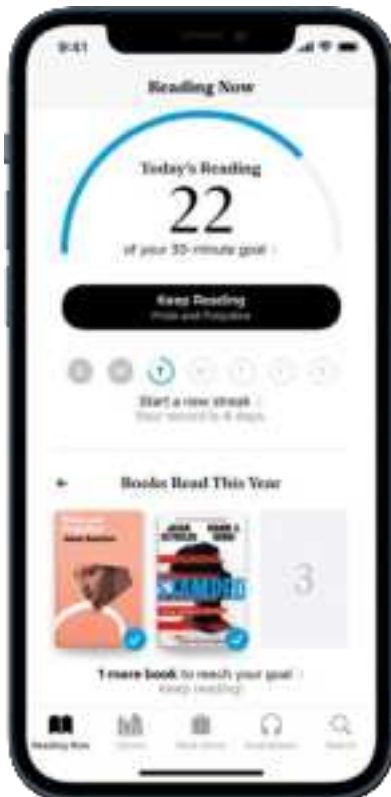
Change your daily reading goal

You can adjust your daily reading goal depending on how many minutes you want to read per day. If you don't customize your daily reading goal, it's set to five minutes per day.

1. Tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Reading Goals.

2. Tap Today's Reading, then tap Adjust Goal.

3. Slide the counter up or down to set the minutes per day that you want to read, then tap Done.

When you reach your daily reading goal, you receive a notification from Books; tap it to get more details about your achievement, or send your achievement to friends.

Note: To count PDFs toward your reading goal, go to Settings ⚙ > Books, then turn on Include PDFs.

Change your yearly reading goal

After you finish reading a book or audiobook in Books, the Books Read This Year collection appears below Reading Goals. The default yearly reading goal is three books per year, but you can increase or decrease your goal depending on how many books you want to finish.

1. Tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Books Read This Year.

2. Tap a gray placeholder square, or a book cover, then tap Adjust Goal.

3. Slide the counter up or down to set the books per year that you want to read, then tap Done.

When you reach your yearly reading goal, you receive a notification from Books; tap it to get more details about your achievement, or send your achievement to friends.

See your reading streaks and records

Books lets you know how many days in a row you reach your daily reading goal and notifies you when you set a record.

To view your current reading streak and record, tap Reading Now, then swipe down to Reading Goals.

Turn off notifications and Reading Goals

Turn off notifications: To stop receiving notifications when you achieve a reading goal or set a reading streak, tap Reading Now, tap your account in the top-right corner, tap Notifications, then turn off Reading Goals.

Turn off Reading Goals: Go to Settings ⚙ > Books, then turn off Reading Goals. When Reading Goals is turned off, the reading indicators in Reading Now are hidden and you don't receive notifications.

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app 📚, the books and audiobooks you purchase are saved in your library and automatically sorted into collections, such as Audiobooks, Want to Read, and Finished.

Create a collection and add books to it

You can create your own collections to personalize your library.

1. Tap Library, tap Collections, then tap New Collection.

2. Name the collection, for example, *Beach Reads* or *Book Club*, then tap Done.

3. To add a book to the collection, tap ⚏ below the book cover (or on the book's details page in the Book Store), tap Add to Collection, then choose the collection.

   You can add the same book to multiple collections.

Sort books in your library

Choose how the books in your library are sorted and appear.

1. Tap Library, then scroll down and tap the word that appears next to Sort or Sort By.

2. Choose Recent, Title, Author, or Manually.

   If you choose Manually, touch and hold a book cover, then drag it to the position you want.

3. Tap ≣ to view books by title or cover.

💡 **Tip:** You can sort books in a collection the same way.

Remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs

You can remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs from Reading Now and your library collections, or hide them on your iPhone.

1. Tap Library, then tap Edit.

2. Tap the items you want to remove.

3. Tap ▓ and select an option.

To unhide books and audiobooks that you have hidden, tap Reading Now, tap your account icon, then tap Manage Hidden Purchases.

To redownload books you have already purchased, see the Apple Support article Redownload apps, music, movies, TV shows, and books.

Read PDF documents in Books on iPhone

In the Books app ▓, you can open and save PDFs that you receive in Mail, Messages, and other apps.

Open PDFs in Books

Tap the PDF attachment to open it, tap ▓, then tap Books.

Share or print a PDF document

Open the PDF document, tap ▓, then choose a share option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or tap Print.

See the Apple Support article About AirPrint.

Mark up a PDF

Open the PDF and tap ▓ to use the drawing and annotation tools (tap near the center of a page if you don't see ▓).

See Draw in apps with Markup on iPhone.

View PDFs across devices

You can see PDFs and books that are not from the Book Store across your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Go to Settings 🔘 > [*your name*] > iCloud, turn on iCloud Drive, then turn on Books. Then go to Settings > Books, and turn on iCloud Drive.

Apps

Use Calculator on iPhone

In the Calculator app 🔲, you can perform basic arithmetic calculations with the standard calculator. Or use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.

🎙 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "What's 74 times 9?" or "What's 18 percent of 225?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Use the scientific calculator

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.

Copy, delete, or clear numbers

- *Copy a calculation result:* Touch and hold the calculation result in the display, tap Copy, then paste the result somewhere else, such as a note or message.

- *Delete the last digit:* If you make a mistake when you enter a number, swipe left or right on the display at the top.

- *Clear the display:* Tap the Clear (C) key to delete the last entry, or tap the All Clear (AC) key to delete all entries.

Calendar

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Use the Calendar app to create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.
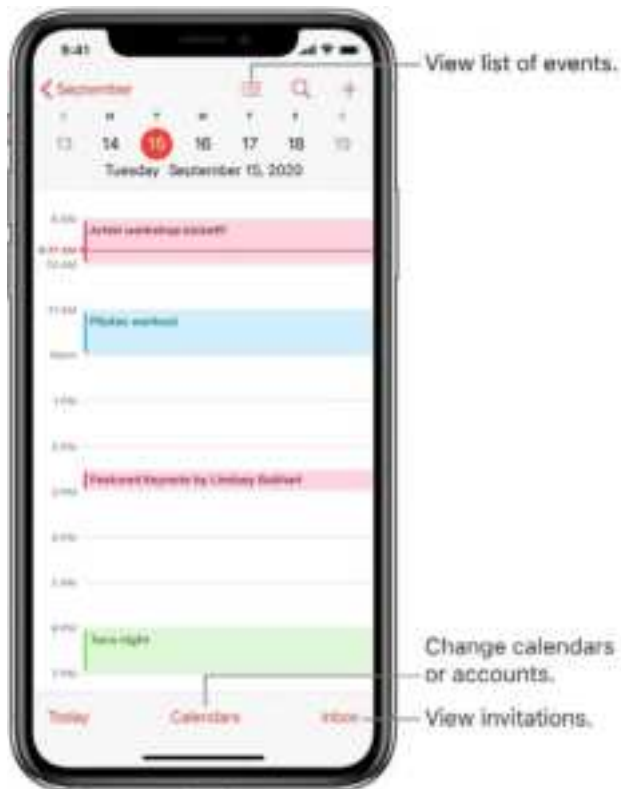
🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9"

- "Do I have a meeting at 10?"

- "Where is my 3:30 meeting?"

Learn how to ask Siri

Add an event

1. In day view, tap ✳ at the top of the screen.

2. Enter the title of the event.

3. Tap Location or Video Call, then enter a physical location or tap FaceTime to enter a video link for a remote event.

   You can also copy a FaceTime link you created or received and paste it in the Location field. See Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone.

4. Enter the start and end times for the event, the travel time, invitees, attachments, and so on. (Swipe up, if necessary, to enter all the meeting information.

5. Tap Add.

Add an alert

You can set an alert to be reminded of an event beforehand.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.

2. In the event details, tap Alert.

3. Choose when you want to be reminded.

   For example, "At time of event," "5 minutes before," or another choice.

   Note: If you add the address of the event's location, Calendar uses Apple Maps to look up locations, traffic conditions, and transit options to tell you when it's time to leave.

Add an attachment

You can add an attachment to a Calendar event to share with invitees.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.

2. In the event details, tap Add attachment.

   The Files app opens, displaying your recently opened files.

3. Locate the file you want to attach.

   To find the file, you can enter its name in the search field, scroll, tap folders to open them, tap Browse to look in other locations (such as iCloud Drive), and so on. See View files and folders in Files on iPhone.

4. Tap Done.

To remove the attachment, tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, swipe left over the attachment, then tap Remove.

Find events in other apps

Siri can suggest events found in Mail, Messages, and Safari—such as flight reservations and hotel bookings—so you can add them easily in Calendar.

1. Go to Settings > Calendar > Siri & Search.

2. Turn on Show Siri Suggestions in App to allow Siri to suggest events found in other apps.

To allow Siri to make suggestions in other apps based on how you use Calendar, turn on Learn from this App.

Edit an event

You can change the time of an event and any of the other event details.

- *Change the time:* In day view, touch and hold the event, then drag it to a new time, or adjust the grab points.

- *Change event details:* Tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, then in the event details, tap a setting to change it, or tap in a field to type new information.

Delete an event

In day view, tap the event, then tap Delete Event at the bottom of the screen.

Send and receive invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app 🗓, send and receive meeting and event invitations. iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and some CalDAV servers let you send and receive meeting invitations. (Not all calendar servers support every feature.)

Invite others to an event

You can invite people to an event you've scheduled.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top of the screen.

2. Tap Invitees.

   If you don't see Invitees, swipe up.

3. Enter the names or email addresses of people you want to invite, or tap 👥 to select Contacts.

4. Tap Done.

If you don't want to be notified when someone declines a meeting, go to Settings ⚙ > Calendar, then turn off Show Invitee Declines.

Note: With Microsoft Exchange and some other exchange servers, you can invite people to an event even if you're not the one who scheduled it.

Reply to an event invitation

1. To respond to an event notification, tap it.

   Or, in Calendar, tap Inbox, then tap an invitation.

2. Tap your response—Accept, Maybe, or Decline.

To respond to an invitation you receive by email, tap the underlined text in the email, then tap Show in Calendar.

If you add comments to your response (comments may not be available for all calendars), your comments can be seen by the organizer but not by other attendees. To see events you declined, tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Show Declined Events.

Schedule an event without blocking your schedule

You can add an event to your calendar without having the timeframe appear as busy to others who send you invitations.

1. Tap the event, then tap Edit.

2. Tap Show As, then tap Free.

Suggest a different meeting time

You can suggest a different time for a meeting invitation you've received.

1. Tap the meeting, then tap Propose New Time.

2. Tap the time, then enter a new one.

Depending on the capabilities of your calendar server, the organizer will receive either a counter-proposal or an email with your suggestion.

Quickly email attendees

You can email all attendees of an event—for example, to share event details.

1. Tap an event that has attendees.

2. Tap Invitees, then tap 🔲.

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app 🔲, you can view one day, a week, a month, or a year at a time, or view a list of upcoming events. To change your view of Calendar, do any of the following:

- *Zoom in or out:* Tap a year, month, or day to zoom in or out on your calendar. In week or day view, pinch to zoom in or out.

- *View a weekly calendar:* In day view, rotate iPhone sideways.

- *View a list of events:* In month view, tap 🔲 to see the day's events. (Tap 🔲 again to return to month view.)

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app 📅, you can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

Tap 🔍, then, in the search field, enter the text you want to find.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "What's on my calendar for Friday?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Customize your calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app 📅, you can choose which day of the week Calendar starts with, display week numbers, choose alternate calendars (for example, to display Chinese or Hebrew dates), override the automatic time zone, and more.

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Calendar, then choose the settings and features you want.

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app 📅, you can customize the notifications that let you know about upcoming Calendar events, invitations, and more. You can also make sure your events and other calendar information are kept up to date on all your devices.

Customize Calendar notifications

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Notifications > Calendar.

2. Turn on Allow Notifications.

3. Tap a type of event (for example, Upcoming Events), then choose how and where you want the notifications for those events to appear—for example, on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, as banners at the top of the screen, with an alert sound, and so on.

Keep your Calendar up to date across your devices

You can use iCloud to keep your Calendar information up to date on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Calendars.

If you don't want to use iCloud for your Calendar, you can sync your Calendar information between your iPhone and your computer. See Sync iPhone with your computer.

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app 📅, you can set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events. Although you can keep track of all your events and appointments in one place, you don't have to. Additional calendars are easy to set up, and a great way to stay organized.
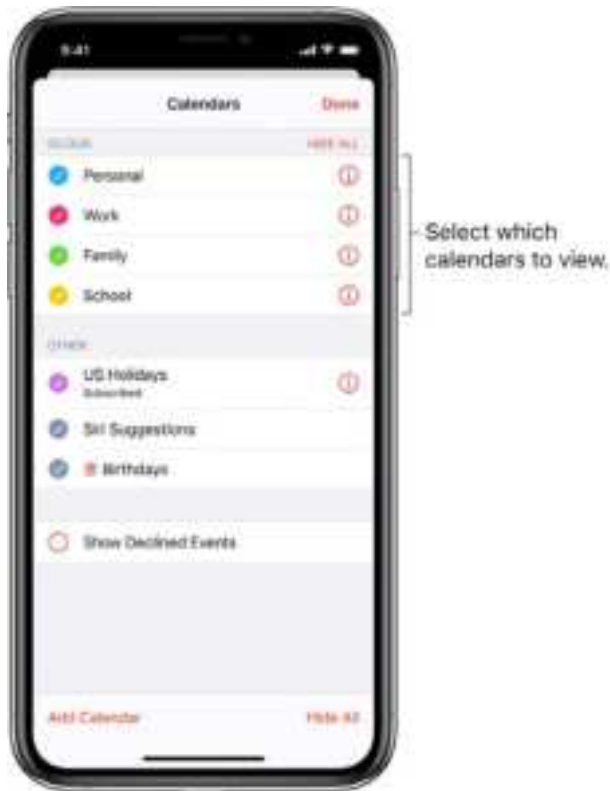
See multiple calendars at once

To view multiple calendars, tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

- Select the calendars you want to view.

- Tap US Holidays to include national holidays with your events.

- Tap Birthdays to include birthdays from Contacts with your events.

Set a default calendar

You can set one of your calendars as the default calendar. When you add an event using Siri or other apps, it's added to your default calendar.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Calendar > Default Calendar.

2. Select the calendar you want to use as your default calendar.

Change a calendar's color

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap ▓ next to the calendar, then choose a color.

3. Tap Done.

For some calendar accounts, such as Google, the color is set by the server.

Turn on iCloud, Google, Exchange, or Yahoo calendars

1. Go to Settings ▓ > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap a mail service (iCloud or Microsoft Exchange, for example), then sign in to your account.

   - Tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account or Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter your server and account information.

Subscribe to a calendar

1. Go to Settings ▓ > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account > Other.

2. Tap Add Subscribed Calendar.

3. Enter the URL of the .ics file to subscribe to and any other required server information.

You can also subscribe to an iCalendar (.ics) calendar by tapping a link to the calendar.

Add a CalDAV account

1. Go to Settings ▓ > Calendar > Accounts > Add Account > Other.

2. Tap Add CalDAV account.

3. Enter your server and account information.

Move an event to another calendar

Tap the event, tap Calendar, then select a calendar to move the event to.

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app 📅, you can share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users. When you share a calendar, others can see it, and you can let them add or change events. You can also share a read-only version that anyone can view but not change.

Create an iCloud calendar

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap Add Calendar.

3. Type a name for the new calendar, then tap Done.

Share an iCloud calendar

You can choose to share a calendar with one or more people in iCloud. Those you invite receive an invitation to join the calendar.

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap 📇 next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.

3. Tap Add Person, then enter a name or email address, or tap 👥 to browse your Contacts.

4. Tap Add.

Change a person's access to a shared calendar

After you invite a person to share your calendar, you can turn on or off their ability to edit the calendar, or stop sharing the calendar with that person.

1. Tap Calendars, tap 📇 next to the shared calendar, then tap the person's name.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Turn on or off Allow Editing.

   - Tap Stop Sharing.

Turn off notifications for shared calendars

When someone modifies a calendar you're sharing, you're notified of the change. You can turn off notifications, if you don't want to receive them.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Notifications > Calendar > Shared Calendar Changes.

2. Turn off Allow Notifications.

Share a read-only calendar with anyone

1. Tap Calendars, then tap 🔴 next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.

2. Turn on Public Calendar, then tap Share Link to copy or send the URL for your calendar.

3. Choose a method for sending the URL—Messages, Mail, and so on.

Anyone you send the URL to can use it to subscribe to the calendar using a compatible app, such as Calendar for macOS.

Delete a calendar

1. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap 🔴 next to the iCloud calendar you want to delete.

3. Tap Delete Calendar at the bottom of the list.

Take photos

iPhone camera basics

Learn how to take photos with Camera 📷 on your iPhone. Choose from camera modes such as Photo, Video, Pano, or Portrait, and zoom in or out to frame your shot.

🎙 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Open Camera." Learn how to ask Siri.

Open Camera

To open Camera, swipe left on the iPhone Lock Screen or tap the Camera icon 📷 on the iPhone Home Screen.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears in the top-right corner of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features.

Switch between camera modes

Photo is the standard mode that you see when you open Camera. Use Photo mode to take still and Live Photos. Swipe left or right to choose one of the following camera modes:

- *Video:* Record a video.

- *Time-lapse:* Create a time-lapse video of motion over a period of time.

- *Slow-mo:* Record a video with a slow-motion effect.

- *Pano:* Capture a panoramic landscape or other scene.

- *Portrait:* Apply a depth-of-field effect to your photos (on supported models).

- *Square:* Take photos with a square ratio.

Zoom in or out

- On all models, open Camera and pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

Take a photo or video

Tap the Shutter button, or press either volume button to take a photo.

💡 **Tip:** If you want to take a video while you're in Photo mode, touch and hold the Shutter button to record a QuickTake video (iPhone 11 and later).

Use camera tools to set up your shot with iPhone camera

Before taking a photo, you can use tools on your iPhone camera to customize and improve your shot. Turn the flash on or off, set a timer, adjust your camera's focus and exposure, straighten your shots with a grid, or add a filter.

Turn the flash on or off

Your iPhone camera is set to automatically use the flash when needed. To manually control the flash before you take a photo, do the following:

- *On iPhone X*S, *iPhone X*R, *and later*: Tap ⚡ to turn the flash on or off. Or, tap ▦, then tap ⚡ below the frame to choose Auto, On, or Off.

- *On iPhone X and earlier*: Tap ⚡, then choose Auto, On, or Off.

Use the timer

Set a timer on your iPhone camera to give yourself time to get in the shot.

- *On iPhone X*S, *iPhone X*R, *and later*: Tap ▦, tap ⏲, choose 3s or 10s, then tap the Shutter button to start the timer.

- *On iPhone X and earlier*: Tap ⏲, choose 3s or 10s, then tap the Shutter button to start the timer.

Adjust the camera's focus and exposure

Before you take a photo, the iPhone camera automatically sets the focus and exposure, and face detection balances the exposure across many faces. If you want to manually adjust the focus and exposure, do the following:

1. Tap the screen to show the automatic focus area and exposure setting.

2. Tap where you want to move the focus area.

3. Next to the focus area, drag ▦ up or down to adjust the exposure.

   To lock your manual focus and exposure settings for upcoming shots, touch and hold the focus area until you see AE/AF Lock; tap the screen to unlock settings.

On iPhone 11 and later, you can precisely set and lock the exposure for upcoming shots. Tap ▦, tap ▦, then move the slider to adjust the exposure. The exposure locks until the next time you open Camera. To save the exposure control so it's not reset when you open Camera, go to Settings ▦ > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Exposure Adjustment.

Use a grid to straighten your shot

To display a grid on the camera screen that can help you straighten and compose your shot, go to Settings ▦ > Camera, then turn on Grid.

After you take a photo, you can use the editing tools in the Photos app to further align shots and adjust horizontal and vertical perspective. See Straighten and adjust perspective.

Take a photo with a filter

Use a filter to give your photo a color effect.

1. Choose Photo or Portrait mode, then do one of the following:

   - *On iPhone X*S, *iPhone X*R, *and later*: Tap ▦, then tap ▦.

   - *On iPhone X and earlier*: Tap ▦ at the top of the screen.

2. Below the viewer, swipe the filters left or right to preview them; tap one to apply it.

You can remove or change a photo's filter in Photos. See Revert an edited photo.

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

A Live Photo captures what happens just before and after you take your photo, including the audio. You take a Live Photo just like you do a normal photo.

---

1. Open Camera in Photo mode.

2. Make sure Live Photo is turned on. When it's on, you see ▦ at the top of your camera. Tap ▦ to turn Live Photos on or off.

3. Tap the Shutter button to take a Live Photo.

4. To play the Live Photo, tap the photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen, then touch and hold the screen to play it.

To edit and add effects to Live Photos, see Edit Live Photos.

Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera

Use Burst mode on your iPhone camera when capturing a moving subject. Burst mode takes multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from. You can take Burst photos with the rear and front-facing cameras.

1. On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, swipe the Shutter button to the left to take rapid-fire photos. On iPhone X and earlier, touch and hold the Shutter button.

   The counter shows how many shots you took.

2. Lift your finger to stop.

3. To select the photos you want to keep, tap the Burst thumbnail, then tap Select.

   Gray dots below the thumbnails mark the suggested photos to keep.

4. Tap the circle in the lower-right corner of each photo you want to save as an individual photo, then tap Done.

To delete the entire Burst, tap the thumbnail, then tap 🗑️.

💡 **Tip:** You can also press and hold the volume up button to take Burst shots. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Camera, then turn on Use Volume Up for Burst (available on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later).

Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

Use the front-facing camera to take a selfie in Photo mode, Portrait mode (on iPhone X and later), or record in Video mode.

1. Switch to the front-facing camera by tapping 🔄 or 🔄 (depending on your model).

2. Hold your iPhone in front of you.

   💡 **Tip:** On iPhone 11 models and iPhone 12 models, you can tap the arrows inside the frame to increase the field of view.

3. Tap the Shutter button or press either volume button to take the shot or start recording.

To take a mirrored selfie that captures the shot as you see it in the front camera frame, go to Settings ⚙️ > Camera, then turn on Mirror Front Camera (on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later) or Mirror Front Photos (iPhone X and earlier).

Take Portrait mode photos with your iPhone camera

With Camera 📷 on models that support Portrait mode, you can apply a depth-of-field effect that keeps your subject—people, pets, objects, and more—sharp while creating a beautifully blurred background. You can apply and adjust different lighting effects to your Portrait mode photos, and on iPhone X and later, you can even take a selfie in Portrait mode.

Take a photo in Portrait mode

On iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, and later, you can apply studio-quality lighting effects to your Portrait mode photos.

1. Choose Portrait mode.

2. Follow the tips onscreen to frame your subject in the yellow portrait box.

3. Drag ⚏ to choose a lighting effect:

    - *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.

    - *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.

    - *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.

    - *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.

    - *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is similar to Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.

    - *High-Key Light Mono:* Creates a grayscale subject on a white background (available on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later).

4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can remove the Portrait mode effect if you don't like it. In the Photos app 🌈, open the photo, tap Edit, then tap Portrait to turn the effect on or off.

Note: On iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, Night mode turns on when you take a Portrait mode photo in low-light situations with the Wide (1x) lens. To learn more about Night mode, see Take Night mode photos.

Note: On iPhone XR, Stage Light, Stage Light Mono, and High-Key Light Mono are only available when you use the front camera.

Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your Portrait mode photos.

1. Choose Portrait mode, then frame your subject.

2. Tap 🔆 in the top-right corner of the screen.

   The Depth Control slider appears below the frame.

3. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.

4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can use the Depth Control slider in Photos to further adjust the background blur effect. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Adjust Portrait Lighting effects in Portrait mode

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, you can virtually adjust the position and intensity of each Portrait Lighting effect to sharpen eyes or brighten and smooth facial features.

1. Choose Portrait mode, then drag ⬚ to choose a lighting effect.

2. Tap ⬚ at the top of the screen.

   The Portrait Lighting slider appears below the frame.

3. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.

4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can use the Portrait Lighting slider in Photos to further adjust the lighting effect. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera

On iPhone 11 models and iPhone 12 models, Night mode captures more detail and brightens your shots in low-light situations. The length of the exposure in Night mode is determined automatically, but you can experiment with the manual controls.

Night mode is available on the following iPhone models and cameras:

- *iPhone 11 models:* Wide (1x) camera

1. Choose Photo mode. In low-light situations, Night mode turns on automatically: the 🌙 button at the top of the screen turns yellow and a number appears next to the 🌙 button to indicate how many seconds the camera will take to shoot.

2. To experiment with Night mode, tap 🌙, then use the slider below the frame to choose between the Auto and Max timers. With Auto, the time is determined automatically; Max uses the longest time. The setting you choose is saved for your next Night mode shot.

3. Tap the Shutter button, then hold the camera still to take your shot.

   Crosshairs appear in the frame if your iPhone detects movement during capture—align the crosshairs to help you reduce motion and improve the shot.

   To stop taking a Night mode shot mid-capture, tap the Stop button below the slider.

Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

On iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can use Camera 📷 to take photos in Apple ProRAW. Apple ProRAW combines the information of a standard RAW format along with iPhone image processing to offer additional creative control when you make adjustments to exposure, color, and white balance (iOS 14.3 or later).

Apple ProRAW is available on all cameras, including the front camera. Apple ProRAW is not supported in Portrait mode.

Set up Apple ProRAW

To set up Apple ProRAW on iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, go to Settings ▣ > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRAW.

Note: Apple ProRAW photos retain more information about the images, resulting in larger file sizes.

Take a photo with Apple ProRAW

1. Open Camera, then tap ▣ to turn ProRAW on.

2. Take your shot.

   As you shoot, you can toggle between ▣ and ▣ to turn ProRAW on and off.

To learn more about Apple ProRAW, see the Apple Support article About Apple ProRAW.

Camera

Adjust the shutter volume on the iPhone camera

Adjust the volume of the camera's shutter sound using the volume buttons on the side of your iPhone. Or, when Camera is open, swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center, then drag .

Mute the shutter sound using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone.

The shutter doesn't make a sound when Live Photos is turned on.

Note: In some countries or regions, muting is disabled.

Adjust HDR camera settings on iPhone

HDR (high dynamic range) in Camera helps you get great shots in high-contrast situations. iPhone takes several photos in rapid succession at different exposures and blends them together to bring more highlight and shadow detail to your photos.

By default, iPhone takes photos in HDR (for the rear camera and the front camera) when it's most effective. iPhone 12 models record video in HDR to capture true-to-life color and contrast.

Turn off automatic HDR

By default, iPhone automatically uses HDR when it's most effective. To manually control HDR instead, do the following:

- On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Smart HDR. Then from the camera screen, tap HDR to turn it off or on.

- On iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, and iPhone X, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Auto HDR.

  To turn HDR back on from the camera screen, tap HDR, then tap On.

- On iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, and earlier, tap HDR at the top of the camera screen, then tap Off.

Keep the non-HDR version of a photo

By default, the HDR version of a photo is saved in Photos. On iPhone X and earlier models, you can also save the non-HDR version.

Go to Settings > Camera, then turn on Keep Normal Photo.

Turn HDR video off and on

On iPhone 12 models, iPhone records video in Dolby Vision HDR for true-to-life color and contrast. To turn off HDR video recording, go to Settings ⚙ > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

Take videos with your iPhone camera

Use Camera 📷 to record videos on your iPhone and change modes to take slow-motion and time-lapse videos.

Note: For your privacy, a green dot appears in the top-right corner of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features on iPhone.

Record a video

1. Choose Video mode.

2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording. While recording, you can do the following:

   - Press the white Shutter button to snap a still photo.

   - Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.

   - For a more precise zoom on models with Dual and Triple camera systems, touch and hold 1x, then drag the slider to the left.

3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

By default, video records at 30 frames per second (fps). Depending on your model, you can choose other frame rates and video resolution settings in Settings ⚙ > Camera > Record Video. Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

Record a QuickTake video

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, you can record a QuickTake video. A QuickTake video is a video you record in Photo mode. While you record a QuickTake video, you can move the Record button into the lock position and keep taking still photos.

1. In Photo mode, touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording a QuickTake video.

2. Slide the Shutter button to the right and let go over the lock for hands-free recording.

    -   Both the Record and Shutter buttons appear below the frame—tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.

    -   Swipe up to zoom in on your subject, or if you're recording hands-free, you can pinch out on the screen to zoom in.

3. Tap the Record button to stop recording.

💡 **Tip:** Press and hold the volume up or volume down button to start recording a QuickTake video in Photo mode.

Tap the thumbnail to view the QuickTake video in the Photos app.

Record a slow-motion video

When you record a video in Slo-mo mode, your video records as normal and you see the slow motion effect when you play it back. You can also edit your video so that the slow motion action starts and stops at a time you choose.

1. Choose Slo-mo mode.

   On iPhone 11 models and iPhone 12 models, you can tap 🔲 to record in Slo-mo mode with the front camera.

2. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.

   You can tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.

3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

To set a portion of the video to play in slow motion and the rest at regular speed, tap the video thumbnail, then tap Edit. Slide the vertical bars below the frame viewer to define the section you want to play back in slow motion.

Depending on your model, you can change the slow motion frame rate and resolution. To change slow-motion recording settings, go to Settings 🔲 > Camera > Record Slo-mo.

💡 **Tip:** Use quick toggles to adjust the video resolution and frame rate while you record. See Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate.

Capture a time-lapse video

Capture footage at selected intervals to create a time-lapse video of an experience over a period of time—such as a setting sun or traffic flowing.

1. Choose Time-lapse mode.

2. Set up your iPhone where you want to capture a scene in motion.

3. Tap the Record button to start recording; tap it again to stop recording.

💡 **Tip:** On iPhone 12 models, use a tripod to capture time-lapse videos with more detail and brightness when recording in low-light situations.

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

By default, iPhone video records at 30 frames per second (fps). Depending on your model, you can choose other frame rates and video resolution settings. Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

You can also use quick toggles to easily change video resolution and frame rates right on the camera screen.

Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate

In Video mode, use quick toggles at the top of the screen to change the video resolution and frame rates available on your iPhone.

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, tap the quick toggles in the top-right corner to switch between HD or 4K recording and 24, 30, or 60 fps in Video mode.

To display quick toggles on iPhone X and earlier, go to Settings ⚙ > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Video Format Control.

Adjust Auto FPS settings

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, iPhone can improve the video quality in low-light situations by automatically reducing the frame rate to 24 fps.

Go to Settings ⚙ > Camera > Record Video, then do one of the following:

- On iPhone 12 models, tap Auto FPS, then apply Auto FPS to only 30-fps video or to both 30- and 60-fps video.

- On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 11 models, turn on Auto Low Light FPS.

Turn stereo recording on or off

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, iPhone uses multiple microphones to achieve stereo sound. To turn off stereo recording, go to Settings ⚙ > Camera, then turn off Record Stereo Sound.

Turn HDR video off and on

On iPhone 12 models, iPhone records video in HDR and shares HDR videos with devices using iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later; other devices receive an SDR version of the same video. To turn off HDR recording, go to Settings ⚙ > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

Save camera settings on iPhone

You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset when you next open Camera.

---

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Camera > Preserve Settings.

2. Turn on any of the following:

    - *Camera Mode:* Save the last camera mode you used, such as Video or Pano.

    - *Creative Controls:* Save the last settings you used for the filter, lighting option (on iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, and later), or depth control (on iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later).

    - *Exposure Adjustment:* Save the exposure control setting (on iPhone 11 and later).

    - *Live Photo:* Save the Live Photo setting.

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Learn about advanced iPhone camera features that let you capture photos faster, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the camera frame.

Turn Prioritize Faster Shooting off and on

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, the Prioritize Faster Shooting setting modifies how images are processed—allowing you to capture more photos when you rapidly tap the Shutter button

Prioritize Faster Shooting is on by default. To turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting.

Turn Scene Detection off and on

On iPhone 12 models, the Scene Detection setting can identify what you're taking a photo of and apply a tailored look to bring out the best qualities in the scene.

Scene Detection is on by default. To turn off Scene Detection, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Scene Detection.

Turn Lens Correction off and on

On iPhone 12 models and later, the Lens Correction setting adjusts photos taken with the front camera or Ultra Wide camera for more natural-looking results.

Lens Correction is on by default. To turn off Lens Correction, go to Settings > Camera, then turn off Lens Correction.

Turn View Outside the Frame off and on

On iPhone 11 models and later, the camera preview displays content outside the frame to show you what can be captured by using another lens in the camera system with a wider field of view. To turn off this display, go to Settings ⚙ > Camera, then turn off View Outside the Frame.

View, share, and print photos on iPhone

All photos and videos you take with Camera 📷 are saved in Photos. With iCloud Photos turned on, all new photos and videos are automatically uploaded and available in Photos on all your devices that are set up with iCloud Photos (with iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, or later).

Note: If Location Services is turned on in Settings ⚙ > Privacy, photos and videos are tagged with location data that can be used by apps and photo-sharing websites. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

View your photos

1. In Camera, tap the thumbnail image in the lower-left corner.

2. Swipe left or right to see the photos you've taken recently.

3. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.

4. Tap All Photos to see all your photos and videos saved in Photos.

Share and print your photos

1. While viewing a photo, tap 🔗.

2. To share your photo, select an option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages.

3. To print your photo, swipe up to select Print from the list of actions.

See Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby devices.

See the Apple Support article, Use AirPrint to print from your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Upload and sync photos across devices

Use iCloud Photos to upload photos and videos from your iPhone to iCloud and then access them on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch where you're signed in using the same Apple ID. iCloud Photos is useful if you want to keep your photos up to date across multiple devices or save space on your iPhone. To turn on iCloud Photos, go to Settings 🔳 > Photos. When iCloud Photos is turned off, you can still collect up to 1000 of your most recent photos in the My Photo Stream album on devices set up with iCloud. See Use My Photo Stream on iPhone.

Use Live Text with the iPhone camera

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, and later, Camera 📷 can copy and share text, open websites, compose emails, and make phone calls from text that appears within the camera frame.

1. Open Camera, then position iPhone so the text appears within the camera frame.

2. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap <icon to come>.

3. Swipe or use grab points to select text, then do any of the following:

   - *Copy Text:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.

   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.

   - *Look Up:* Search text on the web.

   - *Translate:* Translate text.

   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

4. To go to a website, make a call, or start an email, tap the website, phone number, or email address on the screen.

5. Tap <new icon> to return to Camera.

Scan a QR code with the iPhone camera

You can use Camera 📷 or the Code Scanner to scan Quick Response (QR) codes for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more. The camera automatically detects and highlights a QR code.

Use the camera to read a QR code

1. Open Camera, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

2. Tap the notification that appears on the screen to go to the relevant website or app.

Open the Code Scanner from Control Center

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Control Center, then tap 🟢 next to Code Scanner.

2. Open Control Center, tap the Code Scanner, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

3. To add more light, tap the flashlight to turn it on.

Clock

See the time in cities worldwide on iPhone

Use the Clock app 🕐 to see the local time in different time zones around the world.

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "What time is it?" or "What time is it in London?" Learn how to ask Siri.

1. Tap World Clock.

2. To manage your list of cities, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

   - *Add a city:* Tap ✚, then choose a city.

   - *Delete a city:* Tap 🔴.

   - *Reorder the cities:* Drag ≡ up or down.

Set an alarm on iPhone

In the Clock app ⏰, you can set regular alarms for any time of day and have them repeat on one or more days of the week.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Set an alarm for 9 a.m. every Friday" or "Wake me up tomorrow at 7 a.m." Learn how to ask Siri.

Note: The Wake Up alarm in Clock is set in the Health app as part of a full sleep schedule (including bedtimes, wake up times, and more). If you don't want to set up a sleep schedule, you can set a regular alarm in Clock for the time you want to wake up.

Set a regular alarm

You can set regular alarms for any time, including one for the time you want to wake up. (A regular alarm is unrelated to any sleep schedule.)

1. Tap Alarm, then tap ╬.

2. Set the time, then choose any of the following options:

   - *Repeat:* Choose the days of the week.

   - *Label:* Give the alarm a name, like "Water the plants."

   - *Sound:* Choose a vibration, song, or ringtone.

   - *Snooze:* Give yourself a few more minutes of sleep.

3. Tap Save.

To change the alarm, tap Edit at the top left, then tap the alarm time.

Turn off a regular alarm

Tap the button next to the alarm time.

Remove a regular alarm

To remove a regular alarm in the Clock app, tap Edit at the top left, tap the Delete button 🎛, then tap Delete.

Change the next wake up alarm

The wake up alarm in the Clock app shows the next wake up time in your sleep schedule (if you've set up a sleep schedule in the Health app). Although you don't set the wake up alarm in Clock, you can make changes to it in Clock after you've set up a sleep schedule.

1. Tap Alarm, then tap Change.

2. Adjust your sleep and wake times.

   Drag ⏰ to change your wake up time, 🛏 to change your bedtime, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.

3. Scroll down to Alarm Options to change any of the following:

   - *Wake Up Alarm:* Tap to turn the alarm off or on.

   - *Sounds & Haptics:* Tap to choose a vibration or ringtone.

   - *Alarm volume:* Drag the slider.

   - *Snooze:* Turn on to give yourself a few more minutes of sleep.

To make changes to your sleep schedule that extend beyond your next wake up alarm, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health. (See Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone).

Turn off the next wake up alarm

You can turn off the next wake up alarm in your sleep schedule, or you can turn off all wake up alarms for a sleep schedule.

1. Tap Alarm, then tap Change.

2. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then turn off Wake Up Alarm.

3. Tap Done, then choose one of the following:

   - Change Next Alarm Only

   - Change This Schedule

Remove the wake up alarm

You can remove the wake up alarm by deleting or turning off your sleep schedules.

Do one of the following:

- Tap Change, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health, then turn off Sleep Schedule.

- Go to the Health app, then delete a sleep schedule or turn off all sleep schedules.

Use the timer or stopwatch on iPhone

In the Clock app 🕐, you can use the timer to count down from a specified time. You can also use the stopwatch to measure the duration of an event.

🎙 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Set the timer for 3 minutes" or "Stop the timer." Learn how to ask Siri.

Set the timer

1. Tap Timer.

2. Set the duration of time and a sound to play when the timer ends.

   💡 **Tip:** If you want to fall asleep while playing audio or video, you can set the timer to stop the playback. Tap When Timer Ends, then tap Stop Playing at the bottom.

3. Tap Start.

The timer continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

Track time with the stopwatch

1. Tap Stopwatch. To switch between the digital and analog faces, swipe the stopwatch.

2. Tap Start.

   The timing continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

3. To record a lap or split, tap Lap.

4. Tap Stop to record the final time.

5. Tap Reset to clear the stopwatch.

Use the compass on iPhone

The Compass app ▨ shows you the direction iPhone is pointing, your current location, and elevation.

See your bearings, coordinates, and elevation

Your bearings, coordinates, and elevation are shown at the bottom of the screen.

1. For accurate bearings, hold iPhone flat to align the crosshairs at the center of the compass.

2. To lock your current direction, tap the compass dial.

   A red band appears when you're off course.

To open your location in Maps, tap the coordinates at the bottom of the screen.

Allow Compass to access your location

If Compass doesn't see your location, make sure you've turned on Location Services.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Privacy > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

2. Tap Compass, then tap While Using the App.

For more information, see Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Important: The accuracy of the compass can be affected by magnetic or environmental interference; even the magnets in the iPhone EarPods can cause a deviation. Use the digital compass only for basic navigation assistance. Don't rely on it to determine precise location, proximity, distance, or direction.

Contacts

Add and use contact information on iPhone

In the Contacts app 📇, you can view and edit your contacts lists from personal, business, and other accounts. You can also create contacts and set up a contact card with your own information.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "What's my brother's work address?"

- "Sarah Milos is my sister"

- "Send a message to my sister"

Learn how to ask Siri

Create a contact

Tap ➕.

Siri also suggests new contacts based on your use of other apps, such as email you receive in Mail and invitations you receive in Calendar. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings ⚙️ > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Show Siri Suggestions for Contacts.)

Based on how you use Contacts, Siri also provides contact information suggestions in other apps. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings ▦ > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Learn from this App.) See About Siri Suggestions on iPhone.

Find a contact

Tap the search field at the top of the contacts list, then enter a name, address, phone number, or other contact information.

You can also search your contacts using Search (see Use iPhone to search).

Share a contact

Tap a contact, tap Share Contact, then choose a method for sending the contact information.

Sharing the contact sends all of the info from the contact's card.

Quickly reach a contact

To start a message, make a phone call or a FaceTime call, compose an email, or send money with Apple Pay, tap a button below the contact's name.
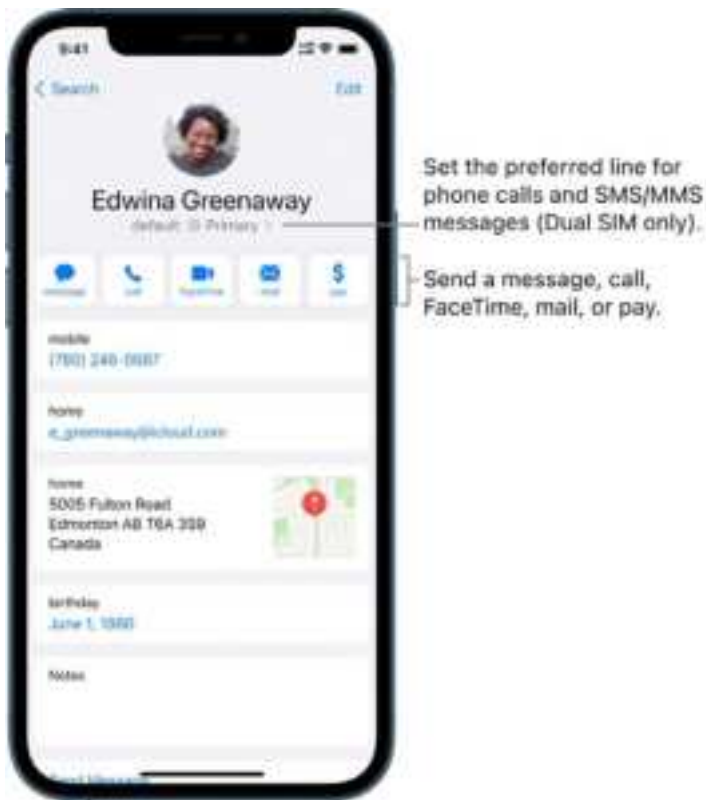
To change the default phone number or email address for a contact method, touch and hold the button for that method below the contact's name, then tap a selection in the list.

Delete a contact

1. Go to the contact's card, then tap Edit.

2. Scroll down, then tap Delete Contact.

Edit contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app 📇, assign a photo to a contact, change a label, add a birthday, and more.

1. Tap a contact, then tap Edit.

2. Do any of the following:

    *   *Assign a photo to a contact:* Tap Add Photo. You can take a photo or add one from the Photos app.

    *   *Change a label:* Tap the label, then select one in the list, or tap Add Custom Label to create one of your own.

    *   *Add a birthday, social profile, related name, and more:* Tap 🟢 next to the item.

    *   *Allow calls or texts from a contact to override Do Not Disturb:* Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

    *   *Add notes:* Tap the Notes field.

    *   *Add a prefix, phonetic name, pronunciation, and more:* Tap "add field," then select an item in the list.

    *   *Delete contact information:* Tap 🔴 next to a field.

3. When you're finished, tap Done.

On models with Dual SIM, when you call or text a contact, iPhone uses the same line you used for your previous communication with this contact by default. To choose a preferred line for phone calls and SMS/MMS message conversations, select the contact, tap default (below the contact's name), then choose a line.

To change how your contacts are sorted and displayed, go to Settings ⚙️ > Contacts.

Add your contact info on iPhone

In the Contacts app 🖼️, add your information to your contact card. iPhone uses your Apple ID to create your contact card, called *My Card,* but you may need to provide your contact information (such as name and address) to complete it.

Complete My Card

Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, then tap Edit. Contacts suggests addresses and phone numbers to help you set up My Card.

If there is no My Card, tap ✛, then enter your information. Next, go to Settings 🖼️ > Contacts > My Info, then tap your name in the Contacts list.

Edit My Card

Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, then tap Edit.

Create or edit your Medical ID

Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, tap Edit, scroll down, then tap Create Medical ID or Edit Medical ID.

Use other contact accounts on iPhone

You can include contacts from other accounts in the Contacts app 🖼️.

Use your iCloud contacts

Go to Settings 🖼️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Use your Google contacts

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Google.

2. Sign in to your account, then turn on Contacts.

Add contacts from another account

1. Go to Settings 🖼️ > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Add Account

2. Choose an account, sign in to it, then turn on Contacts.

Access a Microsoft Exchange Global Address List

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Contacts > Accounts, then tap Exchange.

2. Sign in to your Exchange account, then turn on Contacts.

Set up an LDAP or CardDAV account to access business or school directories

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Contacts > Accounts > Add Account, then tap Other.

2. Tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account, then enter the account information.

Keep contacts up to date across devices

To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID, you can use iCloud.

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Alternatively, you can sync the information between iPhone and your Mac or Windows PC to keep the information up to date across iPhone and your computer. See Sync iPhone with your computer.

If you use iCloud for Contacts, your contacts are kept up to date automatically, and no options appear for syncing them with your computer.

Import contacts from a SIM card (GSM)

Go to Settings ⚙ > Contacts > Import SIM Contacts.

Import contacts from a vCard

Tap a .vcf attachment in an email or message.

Add a contact from a directory

1. Tap Groups, then tap the GAL, CardDAV, or LDAP directory you want to search.

2. Tap Done, then enter your search.

3. Tap the person's name to save their info to your contacts.

Show or hide a group

Tap Groups, then select the groups you want to see.

This button appears only if you have more than one source of contacts.

Use Contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

In the Phone app on iPhone, you can call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app 📇.

Add a Favorite

Put VIP contacts in your Favorites list for quick dialing.

Select a contact, then scroll down and tap Add to Favorites.

Calls from these contacts bypass Do Not Disturb (see Turn a Focus on or off on iPhone).

Save the number you just dialed

1. In the Phone app 📞, tap Keypad, enter a number, then tap Add Number.

2. Tap Create New Contact, or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Add a recent caller to Contacts

1. In the Phone app 📞, tap Recents, then tap ⓘ next to the number.

2. Tap Create New Contact, or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Automate dialing an extension or passcode

If the number you're calling requires dialing an extension, iPhone can enter it for you. When editing a contact's phone number, tap ⌨, then do any of the following:

- Tap Pause to enter a two-second pause (a two-second pause is represented as a comma in the phone number).

- Tap Wait to stop dialing until you tap Dial again (wait-to-dial is represented as a semicolon in the phone number).

Hide duplicate contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app 🗂, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list. When you have contacts from multiple sources, you might have multiple entries for the same person in Contacts. To keep redundant contacts from appearing in your All Contacts list, contacts from different sources with the same name are linked and displayed as a single *unified contact*.

Link contacts

If two entries for the same person aren't linked automatically, you can unify them manually.

1. Tap one of the contacts, tap Edit, then tap Link Contacts.

2. Choose the other contact entry to link to, then tap Link.

When you link contacts with different first or last names, the names on the individual cards don't change, but only one name appears on the unified card. To choose which name appears on the unified card, tap one of the linked cards, tap the contact's name on that card, then tap Use This Name For Unified Card.

Note: When you link contacts, those contacts aren't merged. If you change or add information in a unified contact, the changes are copied to each source account where that information already exists.

FaceTime

Set up FaceTime on iPhone

The FaceTime app 📷 helps you stay connected with friends and family, whether they're using an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or a Mac. With Spatial Audio in FaceTime, people on the call sound like they're in the room with you, talking from the direction of their positions on the screen.

With SharePlay, you can watch movies and TV shows together, or listen to music together in FaceTime. You can also share your screen and show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation—look through a photo album together, plan your next vacation together, or get feedback on something you're working on—all while seeing and hearing everyone's reactions.

You can use the front camera to talk face to face, or switch to the rear camera to share what you see around you.To capture a moment of your conversation take a FaceTime Live Photo.

Note: Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Change your location for FaceTime calls:* Tap your contact info (Apple ID, phone number, or email address), then tap Change Location.

     Note: If you don't have an Apple ID, you can create one—see Manage Apple ID settings on iPhone.

   - *View TV shows and movies together, listen to music together, or share your screen in calls:* Tap SharePlay, then turn on SharePlay.

   - *Highlight the speaker in calls:* Turn on Speaking.

   - *Take Live Photos in FaceTime calls:* Turn on FaceTime Live Photos.

Make and receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

With an internet connection and an Apple ID, you can make and receive calls in the FaceTime app 📷.

Note: You must set up FaceTime before you can make and receive calls.

You can also make FaceTime calls over a cellular data connection, which may incur additional charges. To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Cellular, then turn off FaceTime. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Make a FaceTime call

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Make a FaceTime call." Learn how to ask Siri.

1. In FaceTime, tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.

2. Type the name or number you want to call in the entry field at the top, then tap ⬜ to make a video call or 📞 to make an audio call (not available in all countries or regions).

   Alternatively, you can tap 👥 to open Contacts and add people from there; or tap a suggested contact to quickly make a call.

   💡 **Tip:** To see more during a FaceTime video call, rotate iPhone to use landscape orientation. See Change or lock the screen orientation on iPhone.

   To call multiple people, see Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone.

Start a FaceTime call from a Messages conversation

In a Messages conversation, you can start a FaceTime call with the person you're chatting with.

1. Tap ⬜ at the top right of the Messages conversation.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Tap FaceTime Audio.

   - Tap FaceTime Video.

Leave a message

If no one answers your FaceTime call, do one of the following:

- Tap Leave a Message.

- Tap Cancel.

- Tap Call Back.

Call again

In your call history, tap the name or number of the person (or group) you want to call again.

Receive a FaceTime call

When a FaceTime call comes in, tap any of the following:

- *Take the call:* Drag the slider or tap Accept.

- *Decline the call:* Tap Decline.

- *Set a reminder to call back:* Tap Remind Me.

- *Send a text message to the caller:* Tap Message.

If you're on another call when a FaceTime call comes in, instead of *Accept*, you see the *End & Accept* option, which terminates the previous call and connects you to the incoming call.

💡 **Tip:** You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Delete a call from your call history

In FaceTime, swipe left over the call in your call history, then tap Delete.

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app 📷 on, you can create a link to a FaceTime call and send the link to a friend or a group (using Mail or Messages), which they can use to join or initiate a call.

1. Tap Create Link near the top of the screen.

2. Choose an option for sending the link (Mail, Messages, and so on).)

In Calendar, you can schedule a remote video meeting by inserting FaceTime as the location of the meeting.

Note: You can invite anyone to join you in a FaceTime call, even people who don't have an Apple device. They can join you in one-on-one and Group FaceTime calls from their browser—no login is necessary. (They need the latest version of either Chrome or Edge. Sending video requires H.264 video encoding support.)

Take a Live Photo in FaceTime on iPhone

When you're on a video call in the FaceTime app 📷, you can take a FaceTime Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation (not available in all countries or regions). The camera captures what happens just before and after you take the photo, including the audio, so you can see and hear it later just the way it happened.

To take a FaceTime Live Photo, first make sure FaceTime Live Photos is turned on in Settings ⚙ > FaceTime, then do one of the following:

- *On a call with one other person:* Tap 📷.

- *On a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the tile of the person you want to photograph, tap 📷, then tap 📷.

You both receive a notification that the photo was taken, and the Live Photo is saved in your Photos app.

Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

While you're on a call using the FaceTime app 📷, you can use other apps—for example, to look up information or perform a calculation.

Go to the Home Screen, then tap an app icon to open the app.

To return to the FaceTime screen, tap the green bar (or the FaceTime icon) at the top of the screen.

You can also share your screen with the people in your FaceTime call while using another app. See Share your screen.

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app 📷, you can have up to 32 participants in a Group FaceTime call (not available in all countries or regions).

Start a Group FaceTime call

1. In FaceTime, tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.

2. Type the names or numbers of the people you want to call in the entry field at the top.

    You can also tap 🟢 to open Contacts and add people from there. Or tap suggested contacts in your call history, then tap FaceTime.

3. Tap 📹 to make a video call or tap 📞 to make a FaceTime audio call.

Each participant appears in a tile on the screen. When a participant speaks (verbally or by using sign language) or you tap the tile, that tile moves to the front and becomes more prominent. Tiles that can't fit on the screen appear in a row at the bottom. To find a participant you don't see, swipe through the row. (The participant's initials may appear in the tile if an image isn't available.)

To prevent the tile of the person speaking or signing from becoming larger during a Group FaceTime call, go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn off Speaking below Automatic Prominence.

Note: Sign language detection requires a supported model for the presenter. In addition, both the presenter and participants need iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS Big Sur 11, or later.

Start a Group FaceTime call from a group Messages conversation

In a group Messages conversation, you can initiate a Group FaceTime call with all the people you're chatting with in Messages.

1. Tap 📹 at the top right of the Messages conversation.

2. Do any of the following:

- Tap FaceTime Audio.

- Tap FaceTime Video.

Add another person to a call

Any participant can add another person at any time during a FaceTime call.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap the top of the controls, then tap Add People.

2. Type the name, Apple ID, or phone number of the person you want to add in the entry field at the top.

   Or tap 👥 to add someone from Contacts.

3. Tap Add People.

Join a Group FaceTime call

When someone invites you to join a Group FaceTime call, you receive a notification of the incoming call—you can either join or decline. See Receive a FaceTime call.

Leave a Group FaceTime call

To leave a group call at any time, tap End.

The call remains active if two or more participants remain.

View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone

In the FaceTime app 📷, you can view participants in your Group FaceTime calls in same-size tiles, arranged in a grid. The speaker's tile highlights automatically, so it's easy to know who's talking. Up to six people can be displayed in the grid at a time.

1. In a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap the top of the controls.

2. Tap Grid Layout, then tap Done.

   To turn Grid Layout off, tap it again.)

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

During a call in the FaceTime app on iPhone, you can turn Portrait mode on or off, switch between cameras, or turn your camera on or off.

Blur the background with Portrait mode

On supported models, you can turn on Portrait mode, which automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you, the same way Portrait mode does in the Camera app.

1. When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile.

2. Tap in your tile.

   To turn Portrait mode off, tap the button again.

You can also turn on Portrait mode in Control Center. Open Control Center, tap Video Effects.

Switch to the rear camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then tap 📷.

To switch back to the front camera, tap the button again.

Note: While you're using the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by tapping 1x. Tapping again returns the image to normal size.

Turn off your camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to make the controls appear), then tap 📷. (Tap it again to turn the camera back on).

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Spatial Audio in FaceTime 📹 makes it sound like your friends are in the room with you. Their voices are spread out and sound like they're coming from the direction in which each person is positioned on the screen.

Filter out background sounds

When you want your voice to be heard clearly in a FaceTime call and other sounds blocked out, you can turn on Voice Isolation mode. Voice Isolation mode prioritizes your voice in a FaceTime call and blocks out the ambient noise.

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap Mic Mode, then select Voice Isolation.

Include the sounds around you

When you want your voice and all the sounds around you to be heard in a FaceTime call, you can turn on Wide Spectrum mode.

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap Mic Mode, then select Wide Spectrum.

Turn off the sound

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap 🎙 to turn the sound off.

To turn the sound back on, tap the button again.

When your sound is turned off, your mic detects whether you're speaking—it notifies you that your mic is muted and suggests that you tap to unmute it.

Use SharePlay to watch and listen together in FaceTime on iPhone

With SharePlay in the FaceTime app 📷, you can bring movies, TV shows, and music into your FaceTime calls. With simultaneous playback and shared controls, you can enjoy a real-time connection with everyone on the call—you all hear and see the same moments at the same time. You can also share your screen to show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation.

Note: Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription to participate. Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

Watch video together

You can watch TV shows and movies during a FaceTime call with others. If everyone on the call has access to the video content (by subscription or free trial, for example), they can see the same moments at the same time, and use the shared playback controls to press Play, Pause, Rewind or Fast Forward. The volume adjusts automatically so you can keep talking while you watch.

1. In your FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the controls (if they aren't visible), tap 📷, then tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on 📷, then your screen appears in the FaceTime conversation for everyone to see.

2. Go to the Home Screen, then open a video streaming app that supports SharePlay (for example, Apple TV).

3. In the show or movie you want to watch, tap the Play button, then select "Play for Everyone" to begin watching with everyone on the call.

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access will be prompted to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

The playback controls are shared by everyone on the call who has access, so anyone can press Play, Pause, Rewind, or Fast Forward. (Settings like Closed Captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.)

You can use Picture in Picture to keep watching the video while using another app—for example, a web app for ordering food, or the Messages app, where you can discuss the video in writing (silently).

While you're watching the video, you can play it on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV and watch the video there with everyone on the call.

Listen to music together

You can get together and listen to an album with others on a FaceTime call. If everyone on the call has the required access to the music (for example, some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription), they can see the album you're playing, see what's next, use the shared controls to reorder the songs, add songs to a shared queue, jump to the next track, and hear the music at the same time.

1. In your FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the controls (if they aren't visible), tap ▦, then tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on ▦, then your screen appears in the FaceTime conversation for everyone to see.

2. Go to the Home Screen, then open a music streaming app that supports SharePlay (for example, Apple Music).

3. In the music you want to listen to, tap the Play button to begin a shared listening session.

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the music starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access will be prompted to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

The playback controls are shared by everyone on the call who has access, so anyone on the call can press Play, Pause, Rewind, Fast Forward, or go to the next track.

Share your screen

SharePlay lets you share your screen in a FaceTime call—you can show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation. You can look through a photo album together, plan your next vacation together, or get feedback on something you're working on, all while seeing and hearing everyone's reactions.
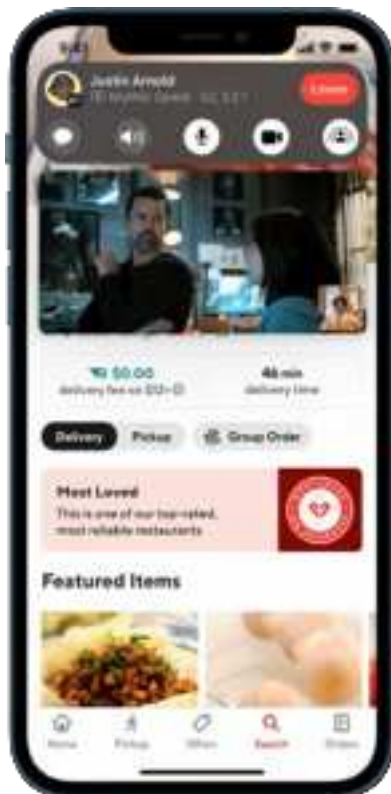
1. In your FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the controls (if they aren't visible), tap ▦, then tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on ▦, then your screen appears in the FaceTime conversation for everyone to see.

2. Go to the Home Screen, then open an app you want to share in the call.

To end the Screen Sharing session, tap ▦.

Add camera effects in FaceTime calls on iPhone

On video calls using the FaceTime app ▦, you can become your favorite Memoji or Memoji character (on an iPhone with Face ID). On supported models, you can use a built-in filter to change your appearance and add stickers, labels, and shapes. You can take screenshots in FaceTime that include the special camera effects you add to a call.

Become a Memoji

In Messages on an iPhone with Face ID, you can create a Memoji character to use in your FaceTime calls. iPhone captures your movements, facial expressions, and voice, and conveys them through your character. (Your character imitates you even when you stick out your tongue!)

See Use Memoji in Messages on iPhone.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap ▦. (If you don't see ▦, tap the screen.)

2. Tap ▦, then choose a Memoji (swipe through the characters at the bottom, then tap one).

   The other caller hears what you say, but sees your Memoji doing the talking.

Use a filter to change your appearance

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap your tile, then tap ▦ (supported models.

2. Tap ▦ to open the filters.

3. Choose your appearance by tapping a filter at the bottom (swipe left or right to preview them).

Add a text label

1. During a call, tap the screen, then tap ▦.

2. Tap ▦, then tap a text label.

   To see more label options, swipe up from the top of the text window.

3. While the label is selected, type the text you want to appear in the label, then tap away from it.

4. Drag the label where you want to place it.

   To delete the label, tap it, then tap ⬚.

Add stickers

1. During a call, tap your tile, tap ⬚, then do any of the following:

   - Tap ⬚ to add a Memoji sticker or ⬚ to add an Emoji sticker.

   - Tap ⬚, swipe up, then tap ⬚.

2. Tap a sticker to add it to the call.

   To see more options, swipe left or swipe up.

3. Drag the sticker to place it where you want.

   To delete the sticker, tap it, then tap ⬚.

Add shapes

1. During a call, tap your tile, then tap ⬚.

2. Tap ⬚, then tap a shape to add it to the call.

   To see more options, swipe up from the top of the shapes window.

3. Drag the shape where you want to place it.

   To delete the shape, tap it, then tap ⬚.

Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

You can leave a call in the FaceTime app ⬚ at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

Leave a FaceTime call

Tap the screen to show the FaceTime Controls (if they aren't visible), then tap End.

Switch to a Messages conversation

To switch your conversation to Messages, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap ⬚.

Block unwanted callers in FaceTime on iPhone

In the FaceTime app 📷, you can block voice calls, FaceTime calls, and text messages from unwanted callers.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > FaceTime > Blocked Contacts.

2. Scroll down, then tap Add New at the bottom of the list.

3. Select the contact you want to block.

To unblock a contact or phone number, swipe it to the left, then tap Unblock.

See the Apple Support article Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Files

Connect servers or external devices with Files on iPhone

You can use the Files app 📁 to access files stored on file servers, other cloud storage providers like Box and Dropbox, and external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, after you connect them to your iPhone.

Connect to a computer or file server

1. Tap ▤ at the top of the Browse screen.

   If you don't see ▤, tap Browse again.

2. Tap Connect to Server.

3. Enter a local hostname or a network address, then tap Connect.

   💡 **Tip:** After you connect to a computer or file server, it appears in the Recent Servers list on the Connect to Server screen. To connect to a recent server, tap its name.

4. Select how you want to connect:

   - *Guest:* You can connect as a Guest user if the shared computer permits guest access.

   - *Registered User:* If you select Registered User, enter your user name and password.

5. Tap Next, then select the server volume or shared folder in the Browse screen (under Shared).

To disconnect from the file server, tap ▤ next to the server in the Browse screen.

For information on how to set up your Mac to share files, see Set up file sharing on Mac in the macOS User Guide.

Add a cloud storage service

1. Download the app from the App Store, then open the app and follow the onscreen instructions.

2. Open Files, then tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.

3. Tap More Locations (below Locations), then turn on the service.

4. To view your contents, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card

For information on how to connect external storage devices and SD cards, see Connect external storage devices to iPhone.

View files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app 📂, view and open your documents, images, and other files.

View recently opened files

Tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.

Browse and open files and folders

1. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap an item on the Browse screen.

   If you don't see the Browse screen, tap Browse again.

2. To open a file, location, or folder, tap it.

   Note: If you haven't installed the app that created a file, a preview of the file opens in Quick Look.

For information about marking folders as favorites or adding tags, see Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Find a specific file or folder

Enter a filename, folder name, or document type in the search field.

When you search, you have these options:

- *Focus the scope of your search:* Below the search field, tap Recents or the name of the location or tag.

- *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Search.

- *Start a new search:* Tap 🔳 in the search field.

- *Open a result:* Tap it.

Change to list view or icon view

From an open location or folder, drag down from the center of the screen, then tap 📃.

Change how files and folders are sorted

1. From an open location or folder, drag down from the center of the screen.

2. Tap "Sorted by," then choose an option: Name, Date, Size, Kind, or Tags.

Rearrange the Browse screen

Tap ⬜ at the top of the Browse screen, tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Hide a location:* Turn the location off.

- *Delete a tag and remove it from all items:* Tap 🔴 next to the tag. (See Tag a file or folder.)

- *Remove an item from the Favorites list:* Tap 🔴 next to the item. (See Mark a folder as a favorite.)

- *Change the order of an item:* Touch and hold ☰, then drag it to a new position.

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app 📁, organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

Create a folder

1. Open a location or an existing folder.

2. Drag down from the center of the screen, tap ⬜, then tap New Folder.

   Note: If you don't see New Folder, you can't create a folder in that location.

Rename, compress, and make other changes to a file or a folder

Touch and hold the file or folder, then choose an option: Copy, Duplicate, Move, Delete, Rename, or Compress.

To modify multiple files or folders at the same time, tap Select, tap your selections, then tap an option at the bottom of the screen.

Note: Some options may not be available, depending on the item you select; for example, you can't delete or move an app library (a folder labeled with the app name).

Tag a file or folder

1. Touch and hold the file or folder, tap Tags, then tap one or more tags.

2. Tap Done.

To find tagged items, tap Browse, then tap an item below Tags.

To remove a tag, tap it again.

Mark a folder as a favorite

Touch and hold the folder, then tap Favorite.

To find Favorites, tap Browse.

Send files from Files on iPhone

You can send a copy of any file in the Files app 📁 to others. If you have a document you want to send that isn't digitized, you can scan it with Files first.

Send a file

1. Touch and hold the file, then tap Share.

   💡 **Tip:** To send a smaller version of the file, tap Compress before you tap Share. Then touch and hold the compressed version of the file (identified as a zip file), and tap Share.

2. Choose an option for sending (for example, AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), then tap Send.

Scan a document

Tap ⌄ at the top of the Browse screen, then tap Scan Documents.

💡 **Tip:** If the files or folders you want to share are stored in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or edit their contents—you don't need to send them copies.

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

Use the Files app 📁 to store files and folders in iCloud Drive. You can access them from all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. Any changes you make appear on all your devices set up with iCloud Drive.

iCloud Drive is built into the Files app on devices with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later. You can also use iCloud Drive on Mac computers (OS X 10.10 or later) and PCs (iCloud for Windows 7 or later). Storage limits depend on your iCloud storage plan.

Turn on iCloud Drive

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Choose which apps use iCloud Drive

Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn each of the apps listed under iCloud Drive on or off.

Browse iCloud Drive

1. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.

2. Under Locations, tap iCloud Drive.

   If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again. If you don't see iCloud Drive under Locations, tap Locations.

3. To open a folder, tap it.

   See View files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

After you set up iCloud Drive, you can use the Files app 📁 to share folders and individual files with friends and colleagues. When you make changes to a shared folder or file, others see your changes automatically. If you allow people to make edits, their changes appear automatically as well.

Files and folders shared in iCloud Drive have these important characteristics:

- If you share a folder, all items added to that folder by you or other participants are automatically shared.

- The link to a shared file includes its name. If the name or content is confidential, be sure to ask recipients not to forward the link to anyone else.

- If you move a shared file to another folder or location, the link no longer works, and people lose access to the item.

- Depending on the app, users might need to reopen a file or tap the original link to see the latest changes.

Share a folder or file

If you own a folder or file in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or change its contents.

You can share a folder and file so that only people you invite can open it, or anyone with the link can open it.

You can allow the contents of a folder or file to be changed, or you can restrict access so that the contents can only be viewed.

When you share a folder, only the people you invite can access the files in the shared folder by default. To invite more people to access the files, you must change the settings of the shared folder to add more participants. You can't select an individual file within the shared folder and add participants to it.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ⌸, then tap Share Folder in iCloud or Share File in iCloud.

3. Do one of the following:

   - *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Only people you invite," tap "Can make changes," then choose a method—such as Messages or Mail—for sending people a link to the folder or file.

   - *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Only people you invite," tap "View only," then choose a method for sending the link.

   - *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "Can make changes," then choose a method for sending the link.

   - *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap "View only," then choose a method for sending the link.

4. Choose how you want to send your invitation, then tap Send.

Invite more people to share a folder or file

If you already shared a folder or file and its access is set to "Only people you invite," you can share it with more people.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ⌸, then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.

3. Tap Add People and choose a method for sending the link.

4. Enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Share a folder or file with more people using a link

If you set the access to a shared folder or file to "Anyone with the link," anyone with the link can share it with others.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ⌸, tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Send Link.

3. Choose a method for sending the link, enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Change access and permission settings for everyone

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can change its access at any time. However, everyone you shared the link with is affected.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ![icon], tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Share Options.

3. Change either or both of the options.

   - *Access option:* When you change the access option from "Anyone with the link" to "Only people you invite," the original link no longer works for anyone, and only people who receive a new invitation from you can open the folder or file.

   - *Permission option:* When you change the permission option, everyone who has the file open when you change the permission sees an alert. New settings take effect when the alert is dismissed.

Change access and permission settings for one person

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file and its access is set to "Only people you invite," you can change the permission for one person without affecting the permission of others. You can also remove the person's access.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ![icon], then tap Manage Shared Folder in iCloud or Manage Shared File in iCloud.

3. Tap the person's name, then select an option.

Stop sharing a folder or file

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can stop sharing it.

1. Touch and hold the folder or file.

2. Tap Share ![icon], then tap Manage Shared Folder in iCloud or Manage Shared File in iCloud.

3. Tap Stop Sharing.

Anyone who has a file open when you stop sharing it sees an alert. The item closes when the alert is dismissed, the file is removed from the person's iCloud Drive, and the link no longer works. If you later share the item again and set the access to "Anyone with the link," the original link works. If the access is set to "Only people you invite," the original link works again only for people you reinvite to share the item.

Find people

Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Before you can use the Find My app 🟢 to share your location with friends, you need to set up location sharing.

Note: If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy > Location Services > Find My.

Set up location sharing

1. In the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Share My Location.

   The device sharing your location appears below My Location.

2. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, scroll to the bottom, then tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

Note: You can share your location from an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch. To share your location from another device, open Find My on the device and change your location to that device. If you share your location from an iPhone that's paired with Apple Watch (GPS + Cellular models), your location is shared from your Apple Watch when you're out of range of your iPhone and Apple Watch is on your wrist.

You can also change your location sharing settings in Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > Find My.

Set a label for your location

You can set a label for your current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). When you tap Me, you see the label in addition to your location.

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then tap Edit Location Name.

2. Select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Share your location with a friend

1. Tap ![icon], then choose Share My Location.

Tap to share your location.

You can also tap People at the bottom of the screen, scroll to the bottom of the People list, then tap Share My Location.

2. In the To field, type the name of a friend you want to share your location with (or tap ![icon] and select a contact).

3. Tap Send and choose how long you want to share your location.

You can also notify a friend or family member when your location changes.

If you're a member of a Family Sharing group, see Share your location with family members.

Stop sharing your location

You can stop sharing your location with a specific friend or hide your location from everyone.

- *Stop sharing with a friend:* Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you don't want to share your location with. Tap Stop Sharing My Location, then tap Stop Sharing Location.

- *Hide your location from everyone:* Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Share My Location.

Respond to a location sharing request

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap Share below the name of the friend who sent the request and choose how long you want to share your location.

   If you don't want to share your location, tap Cancel.

Stop receiving new location sharing requests

Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Allow Friend Requests.

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app 🟢, once you share your location with a friend, you can ask to see their location on a map.

Ask to see a friend's location

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose location you want to see.

   If you don't see a person in the list, make sure you're sharing your location with them.

2. Tap Ask To Follow Location.

After your friend receives and accepts your request, you can see their location. See Respond to a location sharing request.

If you see their name in the People list but can't see their location on the map, ask them to make sure they're sharing their location and that Location Services is on in Settings > Privacy > Location Services > Find My.

Remove a friend

When you remove a friend, that person is removed from your People list and you are removed from theirs.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to remove.

2. Tap Remove [*name*], then tap Remove.

You can also swipe left across the person's name, then tap the Trash icon.

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

When a friend shares their location with you, you can use the Find My app 📍 to locate them on a map.

Note: If you want to see how far away your friends are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Tap a person to see contact information, get directions, and more.

See the location of a friend

Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to locate.

- *If your friend can be located:* They appear on a map so you can see where they are.

- *If your friend can't be located:* You see "No location found" under their name.

- *If you aren't following your friend:* You see "Can see your location" under their name. You can ask to see a friend's location.

You can also ask Siri to locate a friend who has shared their location with you.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Where's Gordon?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Contact a friend

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to contact.

2. Tap Contact and choose how you want to contact your friend. See Add and use contact information on iPhone.

Get directions to a friend

You can get directions to a friend's current location in the Maps app 🗺️.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to get directions to.

2. Tap Directions to open Maps.

3. Tap the route to get directions from your current location to your friend's location. See Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone.

Set a label for a friend's location

You can set a label for a friend's current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). The label appears below your friend's name when they're at that location.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to set a location label for.

2. Tap Edit Location Name, then select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Mark favorite friends

Favorite friends appear at the top of the People list and are marked by a star.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then find the person you want to mark as a favorite.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Tap the name of the person, then tap Add [*name*] to Favorites.

   - Swipe left across the person's name, then tap the star.

To remove a friend from your Favorites, swipe left and tap the star, or tap the friend, then tap Remove [*name*] from Favorites.

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app 🟢 to get a notification when your friend's location changes. You can get notified when a friend arrives at a location, leaves a location, or is not at a location.

Note: You can only create recurring notifications for friends who have two-factor authentication turned on. See the Apple Support article Two-factor authentication for Apple ID.

You can also let friends know when your location changes. See Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone.

Get notified when your friend arrives at or leaves a location

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.

2. Under Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.

3. Choose whether you want to be notified when a friend arrives at or leaves a location.

4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is nearby the location instead of right at the location.

5. Choose whether you want to be notified only once or every time.

6. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend gets an alert after you set the notification.

   If you set a recurring notification, your friend must approve it before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval when they arrive at or leave the location you chose for the first time.

Get notified when your friend is not at a location

You can receive a notification if your friend or family member is not at a specific location during a set schedule. For example, you can be notified if your child isn't at school during school hours.

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.

2. Under Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.

3. Under When, tap [*your friend's name*] Is Not At.

4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is nearby the location instead of right at the location.

5. Select when you want to be notified.

   - *Time:* Select a start and end time.

   - *Days:* Select the days of the week.

6. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend must approve the notification before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval on the time and day the notifications start.

Change or turn off a notification you set

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose notification you want to change or turn off.

   This could be a notification you receive about a friend, or a notification your friend receives about you.

2. Under Notifications, tap the notification.

3. Do either of the following:

   - *Change a notification:* Change any details, then tap Done.

   - *Turn off a notification:* Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

You can create up to 25 Notify Me notifications.

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app 🟢 to let a friend know when your location changes.

You can also get a notification when your friend's location changes. See Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone.

Notify a friend when your location changes

1. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to notify.

2. Under Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify [*your friend's name*].

3. Choose whether you want to notify your friend when you arrive at or leave a location.

4. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, your friend is notified when you're nearby the location instead of right at the location.

5. Choose whether you want your friend to be notified only once or every time.

6. Tap Add.

You can stop notifying friends when your location changes at any time. See Change or turn off a notification you set.

See all notifications about you

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Under Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.

2. Select a name to see more details.

Turn off notifications about you

You can turn off any location notification about you. This includes notifications you set and notifications your friends create.

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Under Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.

2. Select a name, then tap a notification.

3. Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

Find devices

Add your iPhone to Find My

Before you can use the Find My app 🟢 to locate a lost iPhone, you need to connect the device to your Apple ID.

When your add your iPhone to Find My, you can also get notified if you leave it behind. See Set separation notifications in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone.

Add your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > Find My.

   If you're asked to sign in, enter your Apple ID. If you don't have one, tap "Don't have an Apple ID or forgot it?" then follow the instructions.

2. Tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone.

3. Turn on any of the following:

    - *Find My network:* If your device is offline (not connected to Wi-Fi or cellular), Find My can locate it using the Find My network.

      For an iPhone with iOS 15 or later, turning on the Find My network also allows you to locate the device for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, in power reserve mode, or in Airplane Mode.

    - *Send Last Location:* If your device's battery charge level becomes critically low, its location is sent to Apple automatically.

Your iPhone also includes a feature called Activation Lock that prevents anyone else from activating and using your device, even if it's completely erased. See the Apple Support article Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Add another device

See any of the following:

- *iPad:* Add your iPad to Find My in the iPad User Guide

- *iPod touch:* Add your iPod touch to Find My in the iPod touch User Guide

- *Mac:* Set up Find My on Mac in the Find My User Guide for Mac

- *Apple Watch:* Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide

- *AirPods:* Apple Support article How to find your lost AirPods, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max

You can also add AirTags and other items to Find My using your iPhone. See any of the following:

- Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

- Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Add a family member's device

You can see your family members' devices in Find My if you set up Family Sharing first. Their devices appear below yours in the Devices list. See Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.

You can't add friends' devices to Find My. Friends who lose a device can go to icloud.com/find and sign in with their Apple ID.

Set separation notifications in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app 🟢, you can turn on separation notifications for a device so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave your device without receiving a notification.

You can only set up a separation alert from the device sharing your location. You receive an alert every time it separates from the device you set an alert for.

Set up notifications for your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch

You can set up separation notifications for a device with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch that you want to set up a notification for.

2. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.

3. Turn on Notify When Left Behind, then follow the onscreen instructions.

4. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.

5. Tap Done.

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app 🟢 to locate and play a sound on a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple Watch, AirPods, or Beats headphones (supported models). In order to locate a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: If you want to see how far away your devices are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share on iPhone.

If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate or play a sound on your device using Find My iPhone on iCloud.com.

Tap a device to play a sound, get directions, and more.
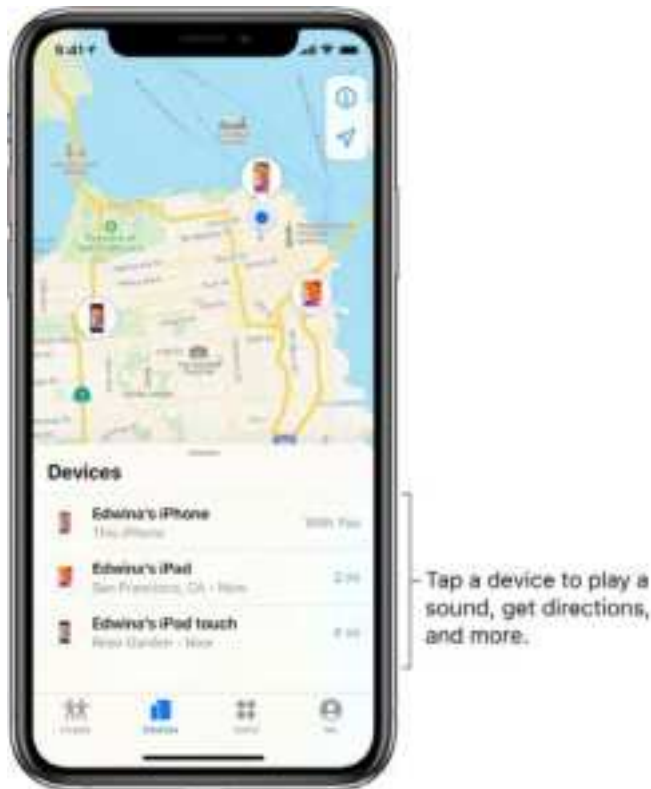
See the location of a device

If your device is online, you can see its location in the Find My app. For a supported device, Find My can locate it for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, in power reserve mode, or in Airplane Mode.

Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to locate.

- *If the device can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is.

- *If the device can't be located:* You see "No location found" under the device's name. Under Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If Find My iPhone is offline or not working.

Play a sound on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to play a sound on.

2. Tap Play Sound.

- *If the device is online:* A sound starts after a short delay and gradually increases in volume, then plays for about two minutes. The device vibrates (if applicable). A Find My [*device*] alert appears on the device's screen.

  A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple ID email address.

- *If the device is offline:* You see Sound Pending. The sound plays the next time the device connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Play a sound on my iPod touch" or "Where's my iPad?" Learn how to ask Siri.

Play a sound on your AirPods or Beats headphones

If your AirPods or Beats headphones (supported models) are paired with your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, you can play a sound on them using Find My.

For supported AirPods models, you can even play a sound on your AirPods if they're in their case.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the AirPods or Beats headphones you want to play a sound on.

2. Tap Play Sound. If your AirPods or AirPods Pro are separated, you can mute one by tapping Left or Right to find them one at a time.

- *If the device is online:* It plays a sound immediately for two minutes.

  A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple ID email address.

- *If the device is offline:* You receive a notification the next time your device is in range of your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Stop playing a sound on a device

If you find your device and want to turn off the sound before it stops automatically, do one of the following:

- *iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Press the power button or a volume button, or flip the Ring/Silent switch. If the device is locked, you can also unlock it, or swipe to dismiss the Find My [*device*] alert. If the device is unlocked, you can also tap OK in the Find My [*device*] alert.

- *Apple Watch:* Tap Dismiss in the Find My Watch alert, or press the Digital Crown or side button.

- *Mac:* Click OK in the Find My Mac alert.

- *AirPods or Beats headphones:* Tap Stop in Find My.

Get directions to a device

You can get directions to a device's current location in the Maps app 🗺.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to get directions to.

2. Tap Directions to open Maps.

3. Tap the route to get directions from your current location to the device's location. See Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone.

Locate or play a sound on a friend's device

If your friend loses a device, they can locate it or play a sound on it by going to icloud.com/find and signing in with their Apple ID and password. To learn more, see Locate a device in Find My iPhone on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you set up Family Sharing, you can use Find My to locate a family member's missing device.

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app 🟢 to mark a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac as lost so that others can't access your personal information. In order to mark a device as lost, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Add a custom message with your phone number.

What happens when you mark a device as lost?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple ID email address.

- You can display a custom message on the device's Lock Screen. For example, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you.

- Your device doesn't display alerts or make noise when you receive messages or notifications, or if any alarms go off. Your device can still receive phone calls and FaceTime calls.

- Apple Pay is disabled for your device. Any credit or debit cards set up for Apple Pay, student ID cards, and Express Transit cards are removed from your device. Credit, debit, and student ID cards are removed even if your device is offline. Express Transit cards are removed the next time your device goes online. See the Apple Support article Manage the cards that you use with Apple Pay.

- For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, you see your device's current location on the map as well as any changes in its location.

Mark a device as lost

If your device is lost or stolen, you can turn on Lost Mode for your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, or lock your Mac.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.

2. Under Mark As Lost, tap Activate.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions, keeping the following in mind:

   - *Passcode:* If your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch doesn't have a passcode, you're asked to create one now. For a Mac, you must create a numerical passcode, even if you already have a password set up on your Mac. This passcode is distinct from your password and is only used when you mark your device as lost.

   - *Contact Information:* If you're asked to enter a phone number, enter a number where you can be reached. If you're asked to enter a message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.

4. Tap Activate (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch) or Lock (for a Mac).

When the device has been marked as lost, you see Activated under the Mark As Lost section. If the device isn't connected to a Wi-Fi or cellular network when you mark it as lost, you see Pending until the device goes online again.

Change the Lost Mode message or email notifications for a lost device

After you mark your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch as lost, you can update your contact information or email notification settings.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.

2. Under Mark As Lost, tap Pending or Activated.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Change Lost Mode message:* Make any changes to the phone number or message.

   - *Get email updates:* Turn on Receive Email Updates if it's not already on.

4. Tap Done.

Turn off Lost Mode for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch

When you find your lost device, do either of the following to turn off Lost Mode:

- Enter your passcode on the device.

- In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, tap the name of the device, tap Pending or Activated under Mark as Lost, tap Turn Off Mark As Lost, then tap Turn Off.

Unlock a Mac

When you find your lost Mac, enter the numeric passcode on the device to unlock it (the one you set up when you marked your Mac as lost).

If you forget your passcode, you can recover it using Find My iPhone on iCloud.com. For more information, see Use Lost Mode in Find My iPhone on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you lose your iPhone, you can turn on Lost Mode using Find My iPhone on iCloud.com.

Erase a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app 🟢 to erase an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac. In order to remotely erase a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

What happens when you erase a device in Find My?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple ID email address.

- When you erase a device remotely using Find My, Activation Lock remains on to protect it. Your Apple ID and password are required to reactivate it.

- If you erase a device that had iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later installed, you can use Find My to locate or play a sound on the device. Otherwise, you won't be able to locate or play a sound on it. You may still be able to locate your Mac or Apple Watch if it's near a previously used Wi-Fi network.

- Apple Pay is disabled for your device. Any credit or debit cards set up for Apple Pay, student ID cards, and Express Transit cards are removed from your device. Credit, debit, and student ID cards are removed even if your device is offline. Express Transit cards are removed the next time your device goes online. See the Apple Support article Manage the cards that you use with Apple Pay.

Erase a device

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to erase.

2. Tap Erase This Device, then tap Continue.

   If the device is a Mac, enter a passcode to lock it (you need to use the passcode to unlock it).

3. If the device is lost and you're asked to enter a phone number or message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.

4. Tap Erase.

5. Enter your Apple ID password, then tap Erase again.

If your device is offline, you see Erase Pending. The remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Cancel an erase

If you erase an offline device and find it before it comes online again, you can cancel the erase request.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device whose erase you want to cancel.

2. Tap Cancel Erase, then enter your Apple ID password.

If you lose your iPhone, you can erase it using Find My iPhone on iCloud.com.

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app 🟢 to remove a device from your Devices list or turn off Activation Lock on a device you already sold or gave away.

If you still have the device, you can turn off Activation Lock and remove the device from your account by turning off the Find My [*device*] setting on the device.

Remove a device from your devices list

If you're not planning on using a device, you can remove it from your devices list. The device must be offline in order for you to remove it.

The device appears in your devices list the next time it comes online if it still has Activation Lock turned on (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch), or is paired with your iOS or iPadOS device (for AirPods or Beats headphones).

1. Do one of the following:

   - *For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch:* Turn off the device.

   - *For AirPods and AirPods Pro:* Put AirPods in their case and close the lid.

   - *For Beats headphones:* Turn off the headphones.

2. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the offline device.

3. Tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you have

Before you sell, give away, or trade in a device, you should remove Activation Lock so the device is no longer associated with your Apple ID.

See the Apple Support articles:

- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#)

- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Mac](#)

- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Apple Watch, or buy one from someone else](#)

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you no longer have

If you sold or gave away your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch and you forgot to turn off Find My [*device*], you can still remove Activation Lock using the Find My app.

1. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to remove.

2. [Erase the device](#).

   Because the device isn't lost, don't enter a phone number or message.

   If the device is offline, the remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. You receive an email when the device is erased.

3. When the device is erased, tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

   All your content is erased, Activation Lock is turned off, and someone else can now activate the device.

You can also remove a device online using iCloud.com. For instructions, see [Remove a device from Find My iPhone on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Find items

Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

You can register an AirTag to your Apple ID using your iPhone. When you attach it to an everyday item, like a keychain or a backpack, you can use the Find My app 🟢 to locate it if it's lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your AirTag behind. See [Set separation notifications in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone](#).

You can also add supported third-party products to Find My. See [Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone](#).

Add an AirTag

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.

2. Remove the battery tab from the AirTag (if applicable), then hold it near your iPhone.

3. Tap Connect on the screen of your iPhone.

4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.

5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple ID, then tap Finish.

You can also register an AirTag from the Find My app. Do either of the following:

- Tap ⊹, then choose Add AirTag.

- Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, scroll to the bottom of the Items list, tap Add New Item, then tap Add AirTag.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple ID, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone.

Change the name or emoji of an AirTag

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag whose name or emoji you want to change.

2. Tap Rename Item.

3. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.

4. Tap Done.

View more details about an AirTag

When you register an AirTag to your Apple ID, you can view more details about it in the Find My app.

If you want to view details about someone else's AirTag, see View details about an unknown item in Find My on iPhone.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag you want to see more details about.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *View the battery level:* A battery icon appears below the location of the AirTag. If the battery is low, you also see instructions for how to replace it.

   - *View the serial number:* Tap the battery icon to see the serial number.

   - *View the firmware version:* Tap the battery icon to see the firmware version.

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

You can use certain third-party products with the Find My app 🟢. You can register these products to your Apple ID using your iPhone, and then use Find My to locate them if they're lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your item behind. See Set separation notifications in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone.

You can also add an AirTag to Find My. See Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone.

Add a third-party item

1. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make the item discoverable.

2. In the Find My app, tap ⊹, then choose Add Other Item.

   You can also tap Items at the bottom of the screen, scroll to the bottom of the Items list, tap Add Item or Add New Item, then tap Other Supported Item.

3. Tap Connect, type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.

4. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple ID, then tap Finish.

If you have trouble adding an item, contact the manufacturer to see if Find My is supported.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple ID, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone.

Change an item's name or emoji

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item whose name or emoji you want to change.

2. Tap Rename Item.

3. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.

4. Tap Done.

Keep your item up to date

Keep your item up to date so you can use all the features in Find My.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to update.

2. Tap Update Available, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: If you don't see Update Available, your item is up to date.

   While the item is updating, you can't use Find My features.

View details about an item

When you register an item to your Apple ID, you can use Find My to see more details about it, like the serial number or model. You can also see if a third-party app is available from the manufacturer.

If you want to view details about someone else's item, see View details about an unknown item in Find My on iPhone.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want more details about.

2. Do either of the following:

   - *View details:* Tap Show Details.

   - *Get or open third-party app:* If an app is available, you see the app icon. Tap Get or to download the app. If you've already downloaded it, tap Open to open it on your iPhone.

Set separation notifications in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app , you can turn on separation notifications for an AirTag or other item so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the item.

You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave an item without receiving a notification.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item you want to set up a notification for.

2. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.

3. Turn on Notify When Left Behind.

4. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.

5. Tap Done.

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to locate a missing AirTag or third-party item that you've registered to your Apple ID.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

See the location of an item

Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to locate.

- *If the item can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is. The location and timestamp appear under the item's name. The item's location is updated when it connects to the Find My network.

- *If the item can't be located:* You see where and when it was last located. Under Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located again.

Play a sound

If the item is nearby, you can play a sound on it to help you find it.

Note: If you can't play a sound on an item, you won't see the Play Sound button.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to play a sound on.

2. Tap Play Sound.

   To stop playing the sound before it ends automatically, tap Stop Sound.

Get directions to an item

You can get directions to an item's current or last known location in the Maps app 🗺️.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to get directions to.

2. Tap Directions to open Maps.

3. Tap the route to get directions from your current location to the item's location. See Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone.

Find the precise location of an AirTag

If you have a supported iPhone and are near your AirTag, you can find its precise location.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the nearby AirTag.

2. Tap Find, then do any of the following:

   - *Move closer to the AirTag:* Start moving around to locate the AirTag and follow the onscreen instructions. You may see an arrow pointing in the direction of the AirTag, an approximate distance telling you how far away it is, and a note if it's located on a different floor.

   - *Play a sound:* Tap 🔘 to play a sound on the AirTag.

3. When you locate the AirTag, tap 🔘.

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

If you lose an AirTag or third-party item registered to your Apple ID, you can use the Find My app 🟢 to mark it as lost.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

What happens when you mark an item as lost?

- You can add a message saying that the item is lost and include your phone number or email address.

- If someone else finds your item, they can use a supported device to see a website with the Lost Mode message. See View details about an unknown item in Find My on iPhone.

Turn on Lost Mode for an item

To mark an item as lost, you need to turn on Lost Mode.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.

2. Under Lost Mode, tap Enable.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions to enter a phone number where you can be reached. To enter an email address instead, tap "Use an email address."

   You can also receive a notification when an updated location for the item is viewable in Find My.

4. Tap Activate.

Change the contact information in the Lost Mode message

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.

2. Under Lost Mode, tap Enabled.

3. Edit the phone number or email address, then tap Save.

Turn off Lost Mode for an item

When you find your lost item, turn off Lost Mode.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item.

2. Under Lost Mode, tap Enabled.

3. Tap Turn Off Lost Mode, then tap Turn Off.

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app 🟢 to remove an AirTag or third-party item from your Apple ID so someone else can register it.

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to remove.

2. Bring the item near your iPhone.

   If the item is not near your device, you can still remove it from your account. However, the item must be reset before anyone can register it to their Apple ID.

3. Tap Remove Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to reset an item. For an AirTag, see the Apple Support article How to reset your AirTag.

View details about an unknown item in Find My on iPhone

If you find an unknown AirTag or third-party item, you can use the Find My app 🟢 on your iPhone to learn more about it and see if it has a Lost Mode message. If an unknown item appears to be moving with your device, you may also receive a safety alert.

You can only view more details about an item and receive safety alerts if the item is registered to someone's Apple ID. Learn about registering an AirTag or third-party item.

Important: If you feel your safety is at risk due to the unknown item, report it to your local law enforcement.

View details about an unknown item

If you find an unknown item and it's not near its owner, you can learn more about it by connecting to it.

1. In the Find My app, tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the bottom of the Items list.

2. Tap Identify Found Item.

   If the item is registered to someone's Apple ID, follow the onscreen instructions to learn more about it and see if there's a Lost Mode message.

Use item safety alerts

If an unknown item appears to be moving with your device, you may receive a notification letting you know its owner can see your location.

When you tap the notification, you can do any of the following:

- *View a map:* You see a map of where the unknown item appeared to be moving with your device.

- *Play a sound:* Tap Play Sound to play a sound on the unknown item to help you find it.

- *Pause safety alerts:* You can temporarily pause safety alerts for the unknown item. Tap Pause Safety Alerts, then tap Mute for Today.

  If the item belongs to someone in your Family Sharing group, you can also tap Indefinitely to turn off safety alerts for the item.

  If you change your mind, tap Enable Safety Alerts to receive alerts again.

- *Learn more about the item:* You can get more details about the unknown item, such as the serial number. Tap Learn About This AirTag or Learn About This Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- *Disable the item:* You can disable the item so it stops sharing your location. Tap Instructions to Disable AirTag or Instructions to Disable Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

View recent item safety alerts

1. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the bottom of the Items list.

2. Tap Item Detected With You.

3. Tap an item to view the safety alert again.

Turn off item safety alerts on your device

If you don't want to receive item safety alerts on your device, you can turn them off.

Note: This setting only affects the device you're currently using. If you don't want to receive safety alerts on another device, you must turn them off on that device.

1. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

2. Under Notifications, turn off Item Safety Alerts.

3. Tap Disable.

Find My

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app 🟢, you can change the map view or distance units.

Note: These settings only affect maps in the Find My app on the device. They don't affect maps in other apps or on other devices.

Change the map view

1. Tap ⬚ in the top-right corner of the map.

2. Under Map View, select Default, Hybrid, or Satellite.

Change distance units

1. Tap ⬚ in the top-right corner of the map.

2. Under Distance, select Miles or Kilometers.

Health

Fill out your Health Details and Medical ID in Health on iPhone

To personalize the Health app ⬚, add your name, date of birth, sex, and other basic information into Health Details. To help first responders and others in case you have a medical emergency, create a Medical ID that contains information about medical conditions, medications, allergies, and more. To better manage your health with the help of the Health app, periodically review the Health Checklist.

Fill out the Health Details screen

When you first open Health, you're asked to provide basic health information about yourself. If you don't supply all of the requested information, you can add it later on the Health Details screen.

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Details, then tap Edit.

3. To make a change, tap a field.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Create a Medical ID

First responders and others can view critical medical information about you in your Medical ID, even while your iPhone is locked.

When you add emergency contacts to your Medical ID, they're automatically alerted when you use Emergency SOS from your iPhone or it's used from your Apple Watch.

You can also allow your Medical ID information to be sent automatically to emergency services, via a secure third-party service, when you call or text 911 or use Emergency SOS from your iPhone or Apple Watch (U.S. only; watchOS 6.2.5 or later required if Apple Watch is connected to Wi-Fi or a cellular network without your iPhone nearby; texting 911 isn't available in all locations).

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Medical ID, then do one of the following:

   - *Create a Medical ID:* Tap Get Started.

   - *Change your Medical ID:* Tap Edit.

     Important: To automatically send your Medical ID information to emergency services when you call or text 911 or use Emergency SOS, turn on Share During Emergency Call near the bottom of the screen.

     To enable first responders and others to view your Medical ID when your iPhone is locked, Show When Locked is turned on by default. Don't turn this option off unless you want to prevent responders from viewing your Medical ID.

3. When you're finished, tap Done.

A first responder views your Medical ID from the Lock Screen by swiping up or pressing the Home button (depending on your iPhone model), tapping Emergency on the Passcode screen, then tapping Medical ID.

💡 **Tip:** You can quickly view your Medical ID from the Home Screen: touch and hold the Health app icon, then choose Medical ID.

Review your Health Checklist

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Checklist.

3. To turn on or learn more about an item in the list, tap it.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Collect, view, and share health data

Automatically collect data in Health on iPhone

The Health app automatically collects several types of health data, such as daily steps and headphone audio levels. Automatically collected data can also appear in the Health app when you use compatible apps (like fitness apps and sleep trackers) and compatible devices (like Apple Watch, weight scales, and blood pressure monitors), all sold separately.

You can also manually add data, like body measurements, menstrual cycle information, and more.

Health data collected by iPhone

iPhone automatically captures, analyzes, and saves valuable health data, including the following:

- *Steps, flights of stairs, and mobility data:* Built-in sensors on your iPhone capture the number of steps you take, the number of flights of stairs you climb, your walking speed, and more. You can browse highlights, trends, and details about this data in the Activity category in Health.

iPhone also captures important mobility metrics such as walking asymmetry, double support time, and more. Over time, as you walk with iPhone in your pocket or wear it near your waist, these metrics are used to calculate and record your walking steadiness. You can receive a notification and share your notification with others if your steadiness becomes low enough to put you at increased risk of falling in the next 12 months.

- *Headphone audio levels:* After you connect AirPods, EarPods, and other compatible headphones to your iPhone, their audio levels are automatically sent to Health. You can review this data to help you understand your headphone listening habits.

- *Sleep history:* If you set up a sleep schedule in Health, iPhone automatically captures the periods you're lying in bed with the intention to sleep. You can use this information to help you meet your sleep goals.

- *Health records from your healthcare providers:* You can set up secure and automatic downloads of health records about your allergies, conditions, medications, and more from supported health organizations (not available in all countries or regions). You can browse these records in Health, and you can share them with your doctor.

Health data collected by Apple Watch

After you pair iPhone with Apple Watch, a periodic heart rate measurement is automatically sent from Apple Watch to Health, where you can browse highlights, trends, and details in the Heart category. You can also set up Apple Watch to send additional information to Health, including the following:

- Exercise minutes and other activity metrics. You can view these metrics in the Activity category in Health on iPhone.

- Notifications about high or low heart rates, low cardio fitness (watchOS 7.2 or later), and irregular heart rhythms (not available in all countries or regions). You can view the details about these notifications in the Heart category.

- Environmental noise levels and notifications about loud sounds. You can view the details about noise in your environment in the Hearing category.

To learn more about collecting health data from Apple Watch, see Track important health information and Measure noise levels in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Health data collected from other apps and devices

As you set up health and fitness apps that you download from the App Store, follow their onscreen instructions to allow them to share data with Health.

To collect data from devices like blood pressure monitors and weight scales, follow their setup instructions. Bluetooth devices need to be paired with iPhone.

Note: You can change health data permissions for apps and devices at any time.

---

iPhone and Apple Watch aren't medical devices. See Important safety information for iPhone.

Manually add data in Health on iPhone

You can manually enter data like body measurements, fitness activity, symptoms, and menstrual cycle information in the Health app 🩺.

---

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:

   - Tap a category. (To see all categories, scroll down.)

   - Tap the search field, then type the name of a category (such as body measurements) or a specific type of data (such as weight).

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Add information to the Cycle Tracking category:* See Track your menstrual cycle in Health on iPhone.

   - *Add information to the Sleep category:* Tap Add Data at the top right.

   - *Add information to other categories:* Tap for the data you want to update, then tap Add Data at the top right.

You can also provide information about your medical conditions, allergies, medications, and more in an emergency Medical ID. First responders and others can view this critical information directly on your iPhone, even while it's locked.

View your data in Health on iPhone

In the Health app , you can view your health and fitness information in one place. For example, you can check whether your symptoms are improving over time, and see how well you're meeting goals for activity, sleep, mindfulness, and more.

View your health trends

After you collect data for long enough, Health can alert you to significant changes in types of data like resting heart rate, number of steps, and amount of sleep. Trend lines show you how much these metrics have changed and for how long.

1. Tap Summary at the bottom left, then scroll down to Trends to view any recent trends.

2. If Health has detected trends, you can do the following:

   - *View more data about a trend:* Tap its graph.

   - *View more trends:* Tap View Health Trends.

To receive notifications about your health trends, tap View Health Trends on the Summary screen, tap "Manage notifications," then turn on Trends.

View your highlights

Tap Summary at the bottom left, then scroll down to see highlights of your recent health and fitness data.

To see more details about a highlight, tap .

Add or remove a health category from Favorites on the Summary screen

1. Tap Summary at the bottom left.

2. Tap Edit for the Favorites section.
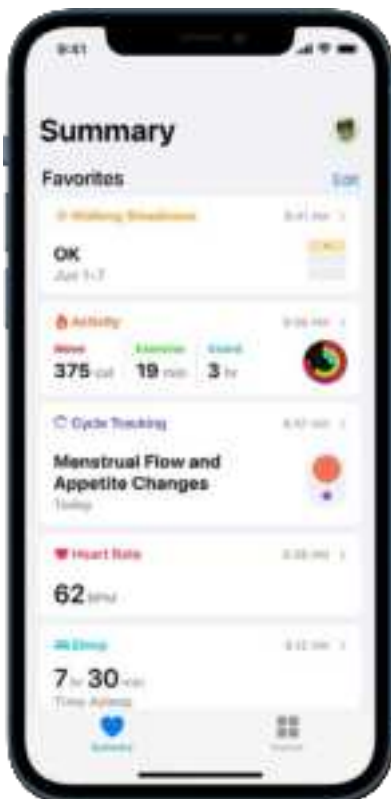
3. Tap a category to turn it on or off, then tap Done.

View trends, highlights, and details for a specific health category

Tap Browse at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:

- Tap a category. (To see all categories, scroll up and down.)

- Tap the search field, then type the name of a category (such as body measurements) or a specific type of data (such as temperature).

Depending on the data type, you may be able to do the following:

- *View details about any of the data:* Tap .
- *See weekly, monthly, and yearly views of the data:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen.
- *Manually enter data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
- *Add a data type to Favorites on the Summary screen:* Turn on Add to Favorites. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *View which apps and devices are allowed to share the data:* Tap Data Sources & Access below Options. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *Delete data:* Tap Show All Data below Options, swipe left on a data record, then tap Delete. To delete all data, tap Edit, then tap Delete All.
- *Change the measurement unit:* Tap Unit below Options, then select a unit.

Learn more about health and fitness

The bottom of the Summary screen provides introductory articles, app suggestions, and other information. Tap an item to learn more.

When you view the details in many health categories, recommended apps are shown in addition to your data.

Share your data in Health on iPhone

You can share health data stored in the Health app ▨—such as health alerts and trends—with friends, family, and others caring for you.

Share health data with someone close to you

People you share health data with can also view the health notifications you receive, including high heart rate and irregular rhythm notifications. You can also share notifications for significant trends, such as a steep decline in activity.

To share with somebody, you need to include them in your contacts, and they need an iPhone with iOS 15 or later.

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap Share with Someone.

   - *Share with an additional contact:* Tap "Add another person."

3. Tap Next.

4. Use the Search field to find someone in your Contacts list.

5. To select someone, tap their contact information.

6. Tap See Suggested Topic or Set Up Manually.

7. Choose topics to share.

8. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.

9. Tap Share, then tap Done.

Your invitation appears as a notification on your contact's iPhone and on their Sharing screen in Health, where they choose whether to accept your invitation.

You receive a notification when your invitation is accepted.

Share data and health records with your doctor

You can share health data (such as heart rate, exercise minutes, hours of sleep, and high heart rate notifications) and health records (such as lab results and immunizations) with your doctors. Doctors view the data in a dashboard in their health records systems (U.S. only, for systems that support Health app data sharing).

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap "Share with your doctor."

   - *Share with an additional provider:* Tap "Share with another doctor."

3. Tap Next, then tap one of the suggested providers, or use Search to find your provider.

4. If Connect to Account appears, tap it, enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal for that account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   In addition to sharing your health data, connecting to your account also causes your health records for that account to download to Health.

5. Choose topics to share with your doctor.

6. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.

7. Tap Share, then tap Done.

Review or change the data you're sharing with others

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.

3. Scroll down, then tap View Shared Data.

4. Make any changes, then tap Done.

To stop sharing with a contact or a provider, or to remove your account with a provider, tap Sharing, tap the name of the person or provider, than tap Stop Sharing or Remove Account.

Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

You can give other apps permission to share health and fitness data with Health. For example, if you install a workout app, its exercise data can appear in Health. The workout app can also read and make use of data (such as your heart rate and weight) shared by other devices and apps. If you didn't give an app permission to share data with Health when you set up the app, you can give permission later. You can also remove permission from an app.

To share your records from healthcare providers with apps, see Share your health records with other apps.

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Below Privacy, tap Apps or Devices.

   The screen lists the items that requested access to Health data.

3. To change the access for an item, tap it, then turn on or off permission to write data to—or read data from—Health.

Share your health and fitness data in XML format

You can export all of your health and fitness data from Health in XML format, which is a common format for sharing data between apps.

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Export all health data, then choose a method for sharing your data.

View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

You can receive notifications about a loved one's health, and you can view data about their activity, mobility, heart rate, and health trends in the Health app .

Before you begin

- Your friend, family member, or caregiver and you must each have your own iPhone with iOS 15 or later.

- Your friend, family member, or caregiver must invite you to share their health information. See Share health data with someone close to you.

Accept an invitation to view another person's health data

1. Do one of the following:

   - Tap the invitation, such as from the Lock screen or Notification Center.

   - In Health, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap View in the invitation at the top of the screen.

2. Tap Accept, then tap Done.

View shared data and quickly respond to it

1. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap the contact card listed below Sharing With You.

3. You can do any of the following:

   - *Quickly respond:* Tap Message, Call, or FaceTime.

   - *See more detail:* Tap an item on the screen.

     If the detail includes chart data, you can start a conversation by tapping Message. The chart is included in your message.

Get health records from your providers

Download health records in Health on iPhone

The Health app 📄 offers access to information from supported health organizations about your allergies, conditions, medications, and more (not available in all countries or regions).

Note: Your health organization might not appear in this feature. Organizations are added frequently. See the Apple Support article Institutions that support health records on iPhone and iPod touch.

When iPhone is locked with a passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID, all of the health data in the Health app —other than what you add to your Medical ID—is encrypted.

Set up health record downloads

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Records, then do one of the following:

   - *Set up your first download:* Tap Get Started.

   - *Set up downloads for additional accounts:* Tap Add Account.

   A list of nearby organizations appears. If your organization doesn't appear in the list, enter the name of a clinic, hospital, or other place where you obtain health records. Or enter the name of a city, state, or province to find organizations near there.

3. Tap the name of your organization.

4. Below Available to Connect, tap the Connect to Account button to go to the sign-in screen for your patient portal.

5. Enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal of that organization, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Download health records on iPhone with QR codes

Using the iPhone camera, you can download verifiable immunization records and lab results and securely store them in the Health app .

---

1. When your healthcare provider sends you a QR code for a verifiable health record (for example, in printed or electronic communications), use your iPhone camera to scan the code.

2. Tap Add to Health, then tap Done.

3. To view the record, tap Browse at the bottom right, scroll down, then tap Immunizations or Lab Results.

View health records in Health on iPhone

After you set up health record downloads from a healthcare provider, your records are securely and automatically downloaded to iPhone, where they're available for viewing in the Health app .

View your health records

Tap Browse at the bottom right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:

- Tap the search field, then enter the name of a health record category (such as clinical vitals) or a type of data (such as blood pressure).

- Scroll down, then tap a category (such as Allergies or Clinical Vitals) below Health Records.

- Scroll down, then tap the name of a specific organization.

To see more details, tap any section where you see .

Pin important lab results

You can pin results so that they appear at the top of the Lab Results screen for quick access.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, scroll down, then tap Lab Results.

2. Do any of the following:

   - Swipe right on a result, then tap .

   - Touch and hold a result, then tap Pin this Lab.

Share your health records with other apps

Third-party apps can request access to your health records. Before you grant access, be sure that you trust the app with your records.

1. To grant access, choose which categories to share—such as allergies, medications, or immunizations—when asked.

2. Choose whether to grant access to your current and future health records or to only your current records.

   If you choose to share only your current records, you're asked to grant access whenever new records are downloaded to your iPhone.

To stop sharing health records with the app, turn off its permission to read data from Health.

Delete an organization and its records from iPhone

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right, then tap Health Records.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the page.

2. Tap the name of an organization, then tap Remove Account.

Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

When you carry your iPhone in a pocket or holster near your waist, the Health app uses custom algorithms that assess your balance, strength, and gait. You can receive a notification if your steadiness becomes low enough to put you at increased risk of falling in the next 12 months, and you can automatically share the notification with selected friends, family members, doctors, and caregivers. Health can also show you exercises to help improve your walking steadiness. (iPhone 8 and later.)

Receive notifications when your steadiness is low or very low.

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Health Checklist.

3. Tap Set Up for Walking Steadiness Notifications, then following the onscreen instructions.

To review your notifications, tap Browse at the bottom right, tap Mobility, scroll down, then tap Walking Steadiness Notifications.

To automatically share your walking steadiness notifications with somebody close to you, see Share your data in Health on iPhone.

View your walking steadiness data

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.

2. Tap Walking Steadiness (you may need to scroll down).

Learn how to improve your walking steadiness

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Mobility.

2. Scroll down, then tap Exercises that May Improve Walking Steadiness

---

Track your menstrual cycle in Health on iPhone

In the Health app ▥, track your menstrual cycle to get period and fertility window predictions.

Get started with cycle tracking

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

2. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   To help improve predictions for your period and fertility window, enter the requested information about your last period.

Log your cycle information

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *Log a period day:* Tap a day in the timeline at the top of the screen. To log the flow level for that day, tap Period below Cycle Log, then choose an option.

     Or tap Add Period at the top right, then select days from the monthly calendar.

     Logged days are marked on the timeline with solid red circles. To remove a logged day, tap it.

   - *Log symptoms:* Drag the timeline at the top of the screen to select a day, tap Symptoms, then select all that apply. When finished, tap Done. Days with symptoms are represented by purple dots.

   - *Log spotting:* Drag the timeline to select a day, tap Spotting, choose Had Spotting, then tap Done.

3. To add additional categories, such as ovulation test results and basal body temperature, tap Options, then choose the categories.

View period and fertility window predictions

Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

The timeline shows predictions for your cycle along with information that you previously logged. Information is displayed in the following format:

- *Light red circles:* Your period prediction.

  To hide or show predicted period days, tap Options, then turn Period Prediction off or on.

- *Light blue days:* A prediction of your likely fertility window. Fertility window predictions should not be used as a form of birth control.

  To show or hide the fertility window prediction, tap Options, then turn Fertility Prediction on or off.

- *Solid red circles:* Days you logged for your period.

- *Purple dots:* Days you logged for having symptoms.

To select different days, drag the timeline. Data that you logged for the selected day appears below in the Cycle Log.

Manage cycle factors

When you enter information about pregnancy, lactation, and contraceptive use, that information is used to help manage your cycle predictions.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

2. Scroll down, then tap Factors.

3. Do any of the following:

   - *Set up factors:* Select any factor that currently applies to you, then tap Done.

   - *Add a factor:* Tap Add Factor, select a factor, tap Started if you need to change the start date, then tap Add.

   - *Change the end date for a current factor:* Tap the factor, tap Ended, select a date, then tap Done.

   - *Delete a current factor:* Tap the factor, then tap Delete Factor.

   - *View previous factor logs:* Tap Show All.

Change period and fertility notifications and other cycle tracking options

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

2. Scroll down, then tap Options.

3. To turn an option on or off, tap it.

View your cycle history and statistics

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

2. Scroll down to see timelines of your three most recent periods; scroll further to see related statistics.

3. To see more details and older information for Cycle History or Statistics, tap in that portion of the screen.

   To find only the days that match a particular symptom or flow level in the detailed Cycle History, tap Filters at the top right, choose an option, then tap Done.

Use headphone hearing safeguards

Use headphone audio-level features on iPhone

iPhone automatically sends you a notification if you listen to loud headphone audio for long enough to affect your hearing, and the notification tells you if iPhone has been turned down to protect your hearing. You can find headphone notifications on the Summary screen of the Health app .

💡 **Tip:** To review the details of a headphone notification, tap Browse at the bottom right of Health, tap Hearing, then tap Headphone Notifications.

You can also set a maximum decibel level to ensure that headphone audio doesn't become uncomfortable for you. iPhone analyzes your headphone audio and reduces any sound above this level.

Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings

1. Go to Settings , then tap Sounds & Haptics (iPhone 7 and later) or Sounds (earlier models).

2. Tap Headphone Safety.

3. Turn on Reduce Loud Sounds, then drag the slider.

   Note: If you set up Screen Time for family members, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

Improve the accuracy of audio measurements for third-party Bluetooth headphones

Classify your Bluetooth devices as headphones, speakers, or other devices.

1. Go to Settings > Bluetooth, then tap next to the name of the device.

2. Tap Device Type, then choose a classification.

Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPhone.

Check your headphone levels on iPhone

While using headphones with iPhone, you can check whether the audio level is OK or loud by viewing the Hearing control in Control Center. In the Health app 🩷, you can review the history of your headphone listening habits.

Check your headphone level while you listen

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Control Center, then add Hearing.

2. Connect your headphones, then play audio.

3. Open Control Center, then tap 👂.

   The audio level (in decibels) of your headphones is displayed on the Headphone Level meter.

Note: You can also tap Live Listen (below the Headphone Level meter) to turn Live Listen on or off. See Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen. Typically, headphone level monitoring and Live Listen aren't used at the same time. The Headphone Level monitor is intended for listening to audio playback. Live Listen is intended for listening to external sounds with the iPhone microphone.

Check your headphone levels over time

1. In Health, tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Hearing.

2. Tap Headphone Audio Levels, then do any of the following:

   - *View exposure levels over a time period:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen. (All levels are measured in decibels.)

   - *Learn about the sound level classifications:* Tap 📊.

   - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.

   - *See details about a moment in time:* Touch and hold the graph, then drag to move the selection.

   - *View details about average exposure:* Tap Show All Filters, then tap Daily Average.

   - *View a line representing average exposure:* Tap Exposure below the graph.

   - *View the high and low range:* Tap Show All Filters, then tap Range.

   - *Filter the data by headphones:* Tap Show All Filters, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then choose one of your headphones.

   - *View highlights:* Scroll down; to see more, tap Show All.

Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPhone.

Prioritize your sleep

Intro to sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

To help you meet your sleep goals, you can use the Health app 📱 to schedule times for unwinding at the end of your day, getting to bed, and waking up. You can create multiple schedules—for example, one for weekdays and another for weekends.

Sleep Focus

Sleep Focus helps reduce distractions at bedtime. After you set a sleep schedule, Sleep Focus filters out notifications and phone calls, and it signals to others that you're not available. A simplified Sleep Screen also replaces the Lock Screen during this time.

Note: You can customize your Sleep Focus to allow interruptions by notifications important to you and phone calls from people important to you. Go to Settings ⚙ > Focus > Sleep, then customize your options. See Set up a Focus.

Wind Down

To help you relax before going to sleep, you can schedule Wind Down to begin from 15 minutes to 3 hours before your bedtime. Your Sleep Focus begins at the start of Wind Down.

If you enjoy activities like reading or listening to music before you go to sleep, you can select Wind Down Shortcuts for these activities. These shortcuts are available on the Sleep Screen.

Wake up alarms

To help you wake up on time, you can select an alarm sound, a vibration, and a snooze option. Or you can choose to have no alarm at all.

Note: You can use the Clock app 🕐 to set one-time and repeating alarms that don't employ the Sleep Focus or Wind Down shortcuts. Unlike sleep schedules in Health, Clock allows you to select songs for its alarms.

After you set up your first sleep schedule, you can set additional schedules. You can also modify, turn off, or remove any schedule you create.

Set up your first sleep schedule in Health on iPhone

You can use the Health app 📱 to schedule a time for unwinding at the end of your day, getting to bed, and waking up.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Swipe up, then tap Get Started (below Set Up Sleep).

3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you set up your first sleep schedule, you can set additional schedules—for example, one for weekdays and another for weekends. You can also modify, turn off, or remove any schedule you create.

Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

In the Health app 🩺, you can turn off your scheduled wake up alarms, and you can turn off or delete your sleep schedules.

Turn off all sleep schedules and alarms

After you create one or more sleep schedules, you can turn them all off at once. When all sleep schedules are turned off, scheduled wake up alarms are also turned off.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule.

3. Tap Full Schedule & Options, then turn off Sleep Schedule (at the top of the screen).

   You can turn them all on again later.

Note: To turn off alarms you set in the Clock app, see Turn off a regular alarm.

Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Tap Edit for the schedule you want to remove.

4. Tap Delete Schedule (at the bottom of the screen).

5. Tap Done.

Permanently turn off the alarm for a sleep schedule

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Tap Edit for the sleep schedule you want to change.

4. Turn off Wake Up Alarm.

   You can turn it back on again later.

5. Tap Done.

The rest of your sleep schedule remains in effect.

Turn off only your next scheduled wake up alarm

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).

3. Turn off Wake Up Alarm.

4. Tap Done.

After your next wake up time, your normal wake up alarm resumes.

Note: You can also use the Clock app to [change your next wake-up alarm](#).

Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

After you [set up your first sleep schedule](#) in the Health app , you can set additional schedules—for example, you can create separate schedules for weekdays and the weekend. You can also modify any schedule you create—for example, you can change the wake up time for any schedule.

Sleep Focus automatically begins at the bedtime you schedule, but you can schedule your Sleep Focus to begin earlier by setting a wind down period before bedtime.

Add or change a sleep schedule

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Do one of the following:

   - *Add a sleep schedule:* Tap Add Another Schedule.

   - *Change a sleep schedule:* Tap Edit for the schedule you want to change.

4. Do any of the following:

  - *Set the days for your schedule:* Tap a day at the top of the screen to add or remove it from your schedule. The schedule applies only to days shown with solid-color circles.

  - *Adjust your bedtime and wake up schedule:* Drag 🛏 to change your bedtime, ⏰ to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.

  - *Set the alarm options:* Turn Wake Up Alarm on or off.

    When Wake Up Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.

    Note: You can't select a song for a sleep schedule alarm. However, you can select a song for an alarm with the Clock app 🕐.

5. When you're finished, tap Add or Done.

   When you tap Done, the changes apply to every day in the schedule.

Change only your next schedule

You can make a temporary change to a sleep schedule.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).

3. Drag 🛏 to change your bedtime, ⏰ to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.

4. Choose alarm options.

   When Wake Up Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.

5. Tap Done.

Note: You can also use the Clock app 🕐 to change your next wake-up alarm.

After your next wake up time, your normal schedule resumes.

Change your Wind Down period and activities

You can schedule your Sleep Focus to begin before bedtime with Wind Down. If you relax before sleep by using iPhone for activities like reading or listening to music, you can select shortcuts to these activities from the Sleep Screen.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, tap Full Schedule & Options, then do one of the following:

- *Change when to turn on your Sleep Focus before your scheduled bedtime:* Tap Wind Down, then select a number of minutes or hours.

- *Add or remove an activity for winding down:* Tap Wind Down Shortcuts, then tap Add Another Shortcut or 🟥.

Use iPhone during your Sleep Focus

Sleep Focus filters out notifications and phone calls, and it signals to others that you're not available. Your Sleep Focus begins at the bedtime you schedule in the Health app 🟥, but you can schedule your Sleep Focus to begin earlier by setting a wind down period before bedtime.

Note: You can customize your Sleep Focus to allow interruptions by notifications important to you and phone calls from people important to you. Go to Settings 🟥 > Focus > Sleep, then customize your options. See Set up a Focus.

If you relax before sleep by using iPhone for activities like reading or listening to music, you can select shortcuts to these activities during your Sleep Focus.

You can also dismiss the Sleep Focus screen to use other iPhone features.

Choose a shortcut to help you wind down before sleep

1. On the Sleep Focus screen, tap Shortcuts.

2. Do one of the following:

- Choose an activity.

- Tap Edit to add or remove a shortcut from the screen.

Return to your last open app during your Sleep Focus

1. Tap Dismiss at the bottom of the Sleep Focus screen.

2. Do one of the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up.

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

3. To show the Sleep Focus screen again, press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

Your Sleep Focus remains in effect during your current bedtime hours. To turn off your Sleep Focus for the duration of the current bedtime hours, open Control Center, then tap 🟥.

Quickly turn your Sleep Focus on or off on iPhone

You can use Control Center to temporarily turn your Sleep Focus on or off until the next bedtime or wake up time that you scheduled in the Health app .

1. Open Control Center.

2. Tap .

Change Sleep Focus and other options in Health on iPhone

You can change your Sleep options in the Health app , such as whether to track time in bed, receive bedtime notifications, and more.

Change your Sleep Focus options

In Health, you can choose to turn Sleep Focus on or off with your sleep schedule. You can also choose whether to show the Sleep Screen or the date and time on the Sleep Screen during your Sleep focus.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Tap Options.

In Settings > Focus, you can further customize your Sleep Focus to allow interruptions by notifications important to you and phone calls from people important to you, choose whether to notify people of during your Sleep Focus, and more. See Set up a Focus.

Change your sleep goal

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Tap Sleep Goal, then select a time.

Any new schedules you set up reflect your new goal. If you edit an existing schedule, the Bedtime and Wake Up control indicates that the schedule doesn't meet your goal.

Turn on or off Bedtime reminders and other Sleep notifications

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

3. Tap Options.

View your sleep history in Health on iPhone

Sleep data in the Health app 🩺 provides insight into your sleep habits.

1. Tap Browse at the bottom right, then tap Sleep.

2. Do any of the following:

    - *View sleep data by week or month:* Tap a tab at the top of the screen.

    - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.

    - *View the details for a day:* Tap the column for the day.

    - *Manually add sleep data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.

    - *Get cumulative sleep data:* Tap Show More Sleep Data.

If you set up a sleep schedule, Time in Bed reflects the period you're lying in bed with the intention to sleep. iPhone automatically tracks your time in bed by analyzing when you pick up and use your iPhone. You can also tap Options at the bottom of the Sleep screen, turn off Track Time in Bed with iPhone, and manually enter your own estimated time in bed. Or you can use a sleep tracker app or a connected sleep monitor to help you determine the amount of time you're in bed.

For information about collecting data from sleep trackers or monitors, see Health data collected from other apps and devices.

Register as an organ donor in Health on iPhone

(U.S. only) In the Health app 🩺, register to be an organ, eye, or tissue donor with Donate Life America. Your decision to donate is accessible to others in your Medical ID. (If you later change your decision, you can remove your registration.)

Learn about organ donation

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

    If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Organ Donation, then tap Learn More for an overview of organ donation and Donate Life America.

Register with Donate Life America

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Summary or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Tap Sign Up with Donate Life.

To later change your donor information or remove your registration, tap your profile picture or initials, tap Organ Donation, then tap Edit Donor Registration.

Back up your Health data on iPhone

If you sign in with your Apple ID, your health and fitness information in the Health app 🩷 is stored automatically in iCloud. Your information is encrypted as it goes between iCloud and your device and while it's stored in iCloud.

In addition to using iCloud, or if you aren't using iCloud, you can back up your Health data by encrypting a computer backup. See Back up iPhone.

Stop storing your Health data in iCloud

Go to Settings ⚙️ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn off Health.

Home

Intro to Home on iPhone

The Home app 🏠 provides a secure way to control and automate HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as lights, locks, smart TVs, thermostats, window shades, smart plugs, and security cameras. You can also view and capture video from supported security cameras, receive a notification when a supported camera recognizes someone at your door or when a package is left at your door, open a compatible lock with a home key, group multiple speakers to play the same audio, and send and receive Intercom messages on supported devices.

With Home, you can control any Works with Apple HomeKit accessory using iPhone.

After you set up your home and its rooms, you can control accessories individually, or use scenes to control multiple accessories with one command.

To control your home automatically and remotely, you must have Apple TV (4th generation or later), HomePod, or iPad (with iOS 10.3, iPadOS 13, or later) that you leave at home. You can schedule scenes to run automatically at certain times, or when you activate a particular accessory (for example, when you unlock the front door). This also lets you, and others you invite, securely control your home while you're away.

To learn more about how to create and accessorize a smart home with your Apple devices, tap the Discover tab.

Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

The first time you open the Home app 🏠, the setup assistant helps you create a home, where you can add accessories and define rooms. If you've already created a home using another HomeKit-enabled app, you'll skip this step.

Add an accessory to Home

Before you add an accessory such as a light or camera, be sure that it's connected to a power source, is turned on, and is using your Wi-Fi network.

1. Tap Home, then tap ＋.

2. Tap Add Accessory, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   When you add an accessory, it's assigned to a default room, or a room you choose.

You may need to scan a QR code or enter an 8-digit HomeKit setup code found on the accessory itself (or its box or documentation). A supported smart TV displays a QR code for you to scan. You can assign the accessory to a room, and give it a name, and then use this name when controlling the accessory with Siri. You can also add suggested automations during set up.

When you set up Apple TV in tvOS and assign it to a room, it automatically appears in that room in the Home app on iPhone.

Change an accessory's room assignment

1. Tap 🖼, then choose the room the accessory is currently assigned to.

   If it's not already assigned, look in Default Room.

2. Touch and hold the accessory's button, then swipe up or tap 🖼.

3. Tap Room, then choose a room.

4. Turn on Include in Favorites to add the accessory to the Home tab.

   To rearrange your favorites, tap 🖼, tap Edit Screen, swipe up, then drag the accessory buttons into the arrangement you want. Tap Done when you're finished.

Organize rooms into zones

Group rooms together into a zone to easily control different areas of your home with Siri. For example, if you have a two-story home, you can assign the rooms on the first floor to a downstairs zone. Then you can say something to Siri like "Turn off the lights downstairs."

1. Tap 🖼.

2. Select a room, tap 🖼, then tap Room Settings.

3. Tap Zone, then tap an existing zone, or tap Create New to add the room to a new zone.

Edit a room

You can change a room's name and wallpaper, add the room to a zone, or remove the room. When you remove the room, the accessories assigned to it move to Default Room.

1. Tap 🖼.

2. Select a room, tap 🖼, then tap Room Settings.

Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Use the Home app 🏠 and Control Center to control accessories in your home.

Control accessories in the Home app

Tap the Home or Rooms tab, then tap the button for an accessory—a light, for example—to quickly turn the accessory on or off, or touch and hold the button until controls appear.

The available controls depend on the type of accessory. For example, with some lightbulbs, there are controls for changing colors. With your smart TV, you can choose an input source.

Control accessories in Control Center

When you're home with your iPhone, you can see the relevant scenes and accessories for that moment in Control Center. For example, a coffee maker may appear in the morning and be replaced by your bedside lamp at night.

Open Control Center, then tap a button to turn an accessory on or off, or touch and hold the button until controls appear.

To quickly see all your favorite scenes and accessories (except cameras), tap 🏠.

If you don't want accessories to appear in Control Center, go to Settings ⚙️ > Control Center, then turn off Show Home Controls.

Edit home accessories

To edit accessory settings, touch and hold the accessory's button, swipe up or tap 🔧, then do any of the following:

- *Rename an accessory:* Tap 🔧 to delete the old name, then type a new one.

- *Change an accessory's icon:* Tap the icon next to the accessory's name, then select a new icon. If you don't get a choice of other icons, it means the icon can't be changed for this accessory.

Group accessories

You can control multiple accessories with the tap of a button by grouping them.

1. Touch and hold an accessory, swipe up on the screen or tap 🔧, then tap Group with Other Accessories.

2. Tap the accessory you want to group with this accessory—another light in the room, for example.

3. In the Group Name field, type a name for the group.

4. Tap Done.

   If you want the group to appear in the Home tab, turn on Include in Favorites.

View your home status

The Home app shows you issues that might need your attention—for example, your front door is unlocked, an accessory's battery is running low, or a light is on during the day. You can often address the issue with just a tap.

1. Open the Home app 🏠, then tap Home.

2. Tap any of the round buttons that appear just below your home's name.

Touch and hold a button that represents a group of accessories—three lights that are switched on in two rooms, for example—and you can separately control the accessories for each room. In this case, you can turn off the two lights in the living room but leave the kitchen light on. Tapping the button controls all the accessories in the group—turns all the lights on or off, for example.

Turn on Adaptive Lighting

Some lights let you adjust their color temperature, from cool blue to warm yellow. You can set supported lights to automatically adjust the color temperature throughout the day. Wake up to warm colors, stay alert and focused mid-day with cooler ones, and wind down at night by removing blue light.

1. Touch and hold a lighting accessory that supports Adaptive Lighting.

2. Tap 🔘.

Add more homes with iPhone

In the Home app 🏠, you can add more than one physical space—a home and a small office, for example.

1. Tap ➕, then tap Add New Home.

2. Name the home, choose its wallpaper, then tap Save.

3. To switch to another home, tap 🏠, then tap the home you want.

Set up HomePod in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app 🏠 to set up HomePod and control many HomePod settings.

To learn what you can do with iPhone and HomePod, see the following in the HomePod User Guide:

- Set up HomePod

- Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device

- Make Personal Requests on HomePod

- Use HomePod for phone calls

Note: HomePod is not available in all countries or regions.

Use Home to send and receive Intercom messages

1. In the Home app, tap ▥, then tap Home Settings.

2. Tap Intercom, then configure these settings:

   - When you can receive Intercom messages

   - Who is allowed to send or receive Intercom messages

   - Which HomePod speakers can use Intercom

3. Tap Back, then tap Done.

4. Tap 🔵, then say something like "Hey Siri, intercom, 'Who ate the last cookie?'"

   A recording of your voice is sent to all the HomePod speakers in your home, and to the iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS devices of all members of your home who can send and receive Intercom messages.

   To send a message to a HomePod in a specific room or zone, say something like "Hey Siri, tell the office 'The movie is starting'" or "Hey Siri, announce upstairs 'I'm going to the store.'"

See Use HomePod as an Intercom in the HomePod User Guide.

Use Home to add and edit HomePod alarms

In the Home app, touch and hold the HomePod button, then do any of the following:

- *Add an alarm:* Tap New Alarm, create the alarm, then tap Done.

- *Edit an alarm:* Tap the alarm, change the time, then tap Done.

- *Turn alarms on or off:* Tap the switch next to an alarm.

- *Delete an alarm:* Tap the alarm, then tap Delete Alarm.

Change HomePod settings

1. In the Home app, touch and hold the HomePod button.

2. Swipe up, then configure HomePod settings.

   You can assign HomePod to a different room, add an automation, create a stereo pair with two HomePod speakers in the same room, rename HomePod, turn on accessibility features, and more.

Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app 🏠 to view video activity captured by your home's HomeKit Secure Video cameras when a person, animal, vehicle, or package delivery is detected. The video captured by your cameras is privately analyzed and encrypted on your home hub device (HomePod, Apple TV, or iPad) and securely uploaded to iCloud so that only you and those you share it with can view it. See the Home accessories website for a list of compatible security cameras.

Depending on your iCloud+ storage plan, you can view the last 10 days of activity from one to an unlimited number of HomeKit Secure Video cameras.

- *50-GB iCloud+ plan:* View activity from a single camera.

- *200-GB plan:* View activity from up to five cameras.

- *2-TB plan:* View activity from an unlimited number of cameras.

Note: Video content doesn't count against your iCloud data limit.

Camera options

When you add a HomeKit Secure Video camera to the Home app, you can choose streaming and recording options and assign the camera to a room. By default, the camera is marked as a favorite and appears in the Home tab. To edit those settings later, touch and hold the camera button, then tap 🔲 to see these options:

- *Room:* A camera can be located in a room inside your home, or you can create a room for an outside location such as your front porch or back yard.

- *Notifications:* Tap Notifications to choose to receive notifications when the camera detects activity, changes status, or goes offline.

- *Recording Options:* You can create separate recording settings for when you're home and when you're away. For example, when you're home, you might choose to stop streaming and recording for a camera inside your home, but continue to stream and record from an outdoor camera.

   Note: The Home app uses the location of devices belonging to members of the home to switch between Home and Away modes. For example, when you leave for work with your iPhone, the camera switches from the When Home settings to the When Away settings.

Set up notifications

1. In Home app 🏠, tap ⚙️, then tap Home Settings.

2. Tap Cameras & Doorbells.

3. Tap the camera for which you'd like to configure notifications.

4. Tap Notifications, then turn on Activity Notifications.

   You can choose to receive notifications based on these factors:

   - *The time of day*

   - *When someone is or isn't home*

   - *When a clip is recorded*

   - *When any or a specific motion is detected*

   When you choose a specific motion, you receive a notification when the camera detects people, animals, or vehicles, or when a package is delivered. For a package to be detected, it must be within the camera's view after delivery.

   💡 **Tip:** Choosing a specific motion, rather than any motion, results in fewer clips (and fewer clip notifications) and less video to review. For example, if you choose to detect people, your camera won't capture the movement of leaves on a tree or a squirrel leaping from branch to branch.

Create activity zones

You can create zones that focus your camera on the most important areas within its view—your front walkway but not the sidewalk behind it, for example. You can then be alerted when motion is detected in these zones.

Note: You can create activity zones only for cameras configured to record when a specific motion is detected. Activity zones don't affect motion detection automations.

1. Tap Home, touch and hold the camera, then tap 📷.

2. Tap Select Activity Zones, tap the video to create a zone, then tap Add Zone.

   To have your camera detect motion only outside the zone you defined, tap Invert Zone.

3. Create any additional zones you want within the camera's view—one for the driveway and another for the mailbox, for example.

4. Tap Done.

To remove an activity zone, tap Select Activity Zones, tap inside a zone, then tap Clear.

View video

1. Tap Home, then tap the camera.

   Live video should play automatically.

2. Swipe through the timeline at the bottom of the screen to browse recorded clips.

3. Tap a clip to play it.

4. Pinch the clip open left and right to show the timeline, then drag to go forward or back through the video.

5. Tap Live to switch back to live video.

When you set up the camera to detect specific motion, the timeline displays unique symbols for people, animals, vehicles, and packages.

You can also view live and recorded video in the Home app on your Mac with macOS 10.15.1 or later.

Choose access options

To allow other people to view video from your cameras, follow these steps:

1. Tap .

2. Tap Home Settings, then below the People heading, tap a person.

3. Tap Cameras, then choose an option.

To learn how to allow other people to view video from your cameras, see Allow others to control accessories in your home.

Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone

Some lock makers offer the option to unlock your door with a home key—a digital key you create in the Home app on your iPhone and store in the Wallet app on your compatible iPhone and Apple Watch (Series 4 and later).

With a home key you can use your iPhone or Apple Watch to unlock your door by placing your device near the lock. You can also use the Home app to share your home key with other people.

Set up a home key

1. Add the lock to the Home app.

2. Choose an unlocking option.

   - *Enable Express Mode:* Unlock the door just by holding your iPhone or Apple Watch near the lock.

   - *Require Authentication:* Similar to paying for a purchase with your iPhone or Apple Watch, double-click the side button, then hold your device near the lock.

3. Choose automations such as Lock After Door Closes and Lock When Leaving Home.

Share a home key with residents

You can share home keys with the residents of your household and manage their access. After adding other people to your household and setting up a home key for yourself, follow these steps.

1. Open the Home app ⬛ on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⬛, then tap Home Settings.

3. Tap Lock, tap a resident, then turn on access for your compatible locks—the front door and garage door, for example.

   When you grant access to a lock, the resident can add a home key to the Wallet app on their iPhone or Apple Watch. They can also unlock doors with the Home app on their device and with Siri.

4. To assign a PIN code to the resident, tap Change PIN Code, enter a code, then tap Done.

   If a resident doesn't have their iPhone or Apple Watch with them, they can enter the PIN code on the lock's keypad.

Residents can change their PIN code in the Home app on their iPhone.

Set up a PIN Code for a guest

In the Home app you can set up a PIN code for people who need temporary access to your home.

1. Open the Home app ⬛ on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold the lock in the Home tab, tap ⬛, tap Manage Access, then tap Add Guest.

3. Give the guest a name—Dog Walker, for example—then turn on the locks you want them to have access to.

4. Tap Change PIN Code, enter a PIN code, then tap Done.

5. Touch and hold the PIN code, tap Share, choose a sharing method, then share the PIN code with the guest.

You can return to this screen to change the PIN code, turn off access to some or all of the locks, or remove the guest.

Use Face Recognition in Home on iPhone

With a compatible camera or doorbell, you can use the Home app 🏠 to be notified when people you've tagged in the Photos app come to your door.

Set up Face Recognition

Face Recognition identifies people by the faces that appear in your photo library or pictures of recent visitors captured by your camera or doorbell.

If you're setting up a camera or doorbell for the first time, do the following:

1. Add the accessory to the Home app.

2. In the Recognize Familiar Faces card, turn on Face Recognition, then tap Continue.

3. Choose who can access your photo library—Never, Only Me, or Everyone in this Home.

   - *Never:* Only faces you've added from clips in the Home app are recognized.

   - *Only Me:* Only the notifications you receive have the names of people in your photo library.

   - *Everyone in this Home:* The notifications for everyone in your home have the names of people in your photo library.

4. Tap Continue, then finish setting up the camera or doorbell.

If you have an existing doorbell or camera and want to use it to identify visitors, tap it in the Home tab, tap 🖼, tap Face Recognition, then turn on Face Recognition. Tap your photo library, then choose who can access it.

Note: Notifications can appear on any of the devices associated with your Apple ID.

Identify recent visitors

You can use Face Recognition to help identify people not in your photo library, using a picture captured by your camera or doorbell.

1. With Face Recognition turned on, open the Home app 🏠, then tap Home.

2. Tap the camera or doorbell, then tap 🔳.

3. Tap Face Recognition, tap an unidentified person listed under Recent, then tap Add Name.

4. Add the person's name or their relationship to you—Mom or Mail Carrier, for example.

5. Choose whether to be notified when they're seen by your camera or doorbell.

Share faces with your household

You can allow the members of your household to see the names of visitors identified in your photo library.

1. With Face Recognition turned on, open the Home app 🏠, tap 🔳, then tap Home Settings.

2. Tap Cameras & Doorbells below Notifications, then tap Face Recognition.

3. Tap your photo library, then tap Everyone in this Home.

Configure a router in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app 🏠 to make your smart home more secure by allowing a compatible router to control which services your HomeKit accessories can communicate with on your home Wi-Fi network and on the internet. HomeKit-enabled routers require that you have a HomePod, Apple TV, or iPad set up as a home hub. See the Home Accessories website for a list of compatible routers.

To configure the router's settings, follow these steps:

1. Set up the router with the manufacturer's app on an iOS device.

2. Open the Home app 🏠, then tap 🖼.

3. Tap Home Settings, then tap Wi-Fi Network & Routers.

4. Tap an accessory, then choose one of these settings:

    -   *No Restriction:* The router allows the accessory to connect to any internet service or local device.

        This provides the lowest level of security.

    -   *Automatic:* The router allows the accessory to connect to an automatically updated list of manufacturer approved internet services and local devices.

    -   *Restrict to Home:* The router only allows the accessory to connect to your home hub.

        This option may prevent firmware updates or other services.

Create and use scenes in Home on iPhone

In the Home app 🏠, you can create scenes that allow you to control multiple accessories at once. For example, you might define a "Reading" scene that adjusts the lights, plays soft music on HomePod, closes the drapes, and adjusts the thermostat.

Create a scene

1. Tap Home, tap ➕, then tap Add Scene.

2. Tap Custom, enter a name for the scene (such as "Dinner Party" or "Watching TV"), then tap Add Accessories.

3. Select the accessories you want this scene to include, then tap Done.

    The first accessory you select determines the room the scene is assigned to. If you first select your bedroom lamp, for example, the scene is assigned to your bedroom.

4. Set each accessory to the state you want it in when you run the scene.

    For example, for a Reading scene, you could set the bedroom lights to 100 percent, choose a low volume for the HomePod, and set the thermostat to 68 degrees.

Use scenes

Tap 🖼️, choose the room the scene is assigned to, then do one of the following:

- *Run a scene:* Tap the scene.

- *Change a scene:* Touch and hold a scene.

    You can change the scene's name, test the scene, add or remove accessories, include the scene in Favorites, and delete the scene. If HomePod is part of the scene, you can choose the music it plays.

    Favorite scenes appear in the Home tab.

Control your home using Siri on iPhone

In addition to using the Home app 🏠, you can use Siri to control your accessories and scenes. Here are some of the things you can say to Siri for the accessories you add and the scenes, rooms, or homes you set up:

- "Turn off the lights" or "Turn on the lights"

- "Set the temperature to 68 degrees"

- "Turn on the bedroom lights at 9 PM"

- "Did I lock the front door?"

- "Show me the entryway camera"

- "Turn down the kitchen lights"

- "Set my reading scene"

- "Turn off the lights in the Chicago house"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#).

Control your home remotely with iPhone

In the Home app 🏠, you can control your accessories even when you're away from home. To do so, you need a *home hub*, a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later), HomePod, or iPad (with iOS 10.3, iPadOS 13, or later) that you leave at home.

Go to Settings ⚙ > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Home.

You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on your home hub device and your iPhone.

If you have an Apple TV or a HomePod and you're signed in with the same Apple ID as your iPhone, it's set up automatically as a home hub. To set up iPad as a home hub, see the Home chapter of the iPad User Guide.

Use automations in Home on iPhone

In the Home app 🏠, you can run automations based on the time of day, your location, the activation of a sensor, or the action of an accessory. You can use preconfigured automations included with the Home app, or create automations of your own.

Use a preconfigured automation

1. Touch and hold an accessory, then swipe up or tap ⚙.

2. Turn on an automation.

To disable an automation, return to the accessory's setting screen, then turn it off.

Create an automation

1. Tap ➕ in the Home, Rooms, or Automation tab.

2. Tap Add Automation, then choose one of the following automation triggers:

   - *When arriving at or leaving a location:* Tap People Arrive or People Leave. Choose when the automation is activated by people arriving or leaving, the location, and the time the automation works.

   - *At a time of day:* Tap A Time of Day Occurs, then choose when you want this automation to run.

     If you choose Sunset or Sunrise, times vary as the season changes.

     You can also set an automation to only occur after sunset, which is useful for turning on lights just when they're needed.

   - *When an accessory changes:* Tap An Accessory is Controlled, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     You might use this, for example, to run a scene when you unlock the front door.

   - *A sensor detects something:* If you've added a sensor to Home, tap A Sensor Detects Something, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

     You might use this, for example, to turn on lights in a stairway when motion is detected nearby.

To disable an automation, tap the Automation tab, tap the automation, then turn off Enable This Automation.

You can also touch and hold an accessory in the Home or Rooms tab, tap 🔳, then add, enable, or disable automations.

Add a Siri shortcut

To make your automation even more efficient, you can add a Siri Shortcut to it.

1. When choosing accessories to control with an automation, swipe up, then tap Convert To Shortcut.

2. Tap 🔳, then choose a shortcut.

See the Shortcuts User Guide.

Allow others to control accessories in your home

In the Home app 🏠, you can invite other people to control your smart accessories. You and the people you invite need to be using iCloud and have iOS 11.2.5, iPadOS 13, or later. You also need to be at your home or have a home hub set up in your home.

Invite others to control accessories

1. Tap 🔳.

2. Tap Home Settings, then tap Invite People.

   If you set up more than one home, tap Home Settings, then tap a home.

3. Tap 🔳 to choose people with an Apple ID from your contacts list, or enter their Apple ID email addresses in the To field.

4. Tap Send Invite.

5. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:

   - *In the notification:* (iOS or iPadOS device) Tap Accept.

   - *In the Home app:* (iOS or iPadOS device) Tap 🔳, tap Home Settings, then tap their name.

   - *On Apple TV:* Tap Show Me on Apple TV, then turn on one or more Apple TVs.

Allow others to access your AirPlay 2-enabled speakers and TVs

1. Tap 🔳.

2. Tap Home Settings > Allow Speaker & TV Access, then choose an option.

You can allow everyone, anyone on the same network, or only people you've invited to share the home. You can also require a password that allows speaker access. To learn more about HomePod speaker and Apple TV access, see the HomePod User Guide and the Apple TV User Guide.

iTunes Store

Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store on iPhone

Use the iTunes Store app ▨ to add music, movies, and TV shows to iPhone.

Note: You need an internet connection to use the iTunes Store. The availability of the iTunes Store and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find music, movies, and TV shows

1. In the iTunes Store, tap any of the following:

   - *Music, Movies, or TV Shows:* Browse by category. To refine your browsing, tap Genres at the top of the screen.

   - *Charts:* See what's popular on iTunes.

   - *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.

   - *More:* Browse recommendations based on what you bought from iTunes.

2. Tap an item to see more information about it. You can preview songs, watch trailers for movies and TV shows, or tap ▨ to do any of the following:

   - *Share a link to the item:* Choose a sharing option.

   - *Give the item as a gift:* Tap Gift.

   - *Add the item to your wish list:* Tap Add to Wish List.

     To view your wish list, tap ▨, then tap Wish List.

Buy and download content

1. To buy an item, tap the price. If the item is free, tap Get.

   If you see ▨ instead of a price, you already purchased the item, and you can download it again without a charge.

2. If required, authenticate your Apple ID with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the purchase.

3. To see the progress of a download, tap More, then tap Downloads.

Redeem or send an App Store & iTunes Gift Card

1. Tap Music, then scroll to the bottom.

2. Tap Redeem or Send Gift.

Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones in the iTunes Store on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app , you can purchase ringtones, text tones, and other alert tones for clock alarms and more.

Buy new tones

1. In the iTunes Store, tap More, then tap Tones.

2. Browse by category or tap Search to find a specific song or artist.

3. Tap a tone to see more information or play a preview.

4. To buy a tone, tap the price.

Redownload tones purchased with your Apple ID

If you bought tones on another device, you can download them again.

1. Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).

2. Below Sounds and Vibration Patterns, tap any sound.

3. Tap Download All Purchased Tones. You might not see this option if you already downloaded all the tones that you purchased or if you haven't purchased any tones.

Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app , you can review and download music, movies, and TV shows purchased by you or other family members. You can also customize your preferences for the iTunes Store in Settings.

Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy for a child.

View and download music, movies, or TV shows purchased by you or family members

1. In the iTunes Store, tap More, then tap Purchased.

2. If you set up Family Sharing, choose a family member to view their purchases.

   Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases.

3. Tap Music, Movies, or TV Shows.

4. Find the item you want to download, then tap ☁.

View your entire iTunes Store purchase history

To see a chronological list of the apps, songs, movies, TV shows, books, and other items purchased with your Apple ID, view your iTunes Store purchase history.

In your purchase history, you can do any of the following:

- View when an order was billed to your account.

- View the date of a purchase.

- Resend email receipts.

- Report a problem with purchased content.

Set content restrictions

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, go to Settings 🔲 > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Content Restrictions, then set any of the available restrictions. You can block explicit content, turn off music videos, restrict content by age-appropriate ratings, and more.

Magnifier

Magnify objects around you with iPhone

In the Magnifier app 🖼️, you can use your iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on objects near you.

Turn on Magnifier

Open the Magnifier app in any of the following ways:

- Tap the app icon. If you don't see the Magnifier app on the Home Screen, look in the Utilities folder in the App Library.

- Use accessibility shortcuts.

- Open Control Center, then tap [the Magnifier button].

  (If you don't see [the Magnifier button], add it to Control Center—go to Settings 🖼️ > Control Center, then choose Magnifier).

Adjust the image

Do any of the following:

- *Adjust the zoom level:* Drag the zoom control slider left or right.

- *Show more controls:* Swipe the controls up.

- *Adjust the brightness:* Tap ▩.

- *Adjust the contrast:* Tap ▩.

- *Apply color filters:* Tap ▩.

- *Add more light:* Tap ▮ to turn on the flashlight.

- *Switch to the front or back camera:* Tap ▩, then tap Front or Back.

💡 **Tip:** To organize the controls you use most often, tap ▩, then reorder the controls or tap Filter Customization to choose your favorite filters.

Freeze the frame

You can freeze one or more frames and review them.

Note: Freeze frames aren't saved to Photos.

1. Tap ▩.

2. To freeze more frames, tap ▩, reposition the camera, then tap ▩.

3. To review the freeze frames, tap View, then tap the frames you want to see.

4. To return to the live lens, tap End.

Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

On iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can use Magnifier to detect people and help you maintain a physical or social distance from others. When iPhone detects people nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback is more frequent when a person is closer to you.

Important: Don't use People Detection for navigation or in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured.

Customize the settings for People Detection

1. Tap ▩, tap ▩ next to People Detection to add it as a secondary control, then tap People Detection (below Filters) to customize any of the following:

   - *Units:* Choose Meters or Feet.

   - *Sound pitch distance:* Tap ▭ or ▣ to adjust the distance. When people are detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.

   - *Feedback:* Turn on any combination of Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and another person.

2. Tap Done.

Set up shortcuts for People Detection

- *Accessibility shortcut:* Go to Settings ▣ > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select People Detection.

- *VoiceOver gesture:* By default, the four-finger triple-tap gesture turns People Detection on or off. To assign a different gesture, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Touch Gestures.

Detect people near you

1. Turn on Magnifier, then tap 🔍.

2. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect people around you.

   If you can't hear the sound or speech feedback, make sure silent mode is turned off.

3. When you're finished, tap End to return to the Magnifier screen or swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen.

Mail

Check your emails in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, you can read emails, add contacts, and preview some of the contents of an email without opening it.

Read an email

In the inbox, tap the email you want to read.

Preview an email and a list of options

If you want to see what an email is about but not open it completely, you can preview it. In the inbox, touch and hold an email to preview its contents and see a list of options for replying, filing it, and more. See Perform quick actions on iPhone.

Show a longer preview for every email

In your inbox, Mail displays two lines of text for each email by default. You can choose to see more lines of text without opening the email.

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail > Preview, then choose up to five lines.

Show the whole conversation

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail, then turn on Organize by Thread (under Threading).

To change how threads are displayed, you can also change other settings in Settings > Mail—such as Collapse Read Messages or Most Recent Message on Top.

Show To and Cc labels in your Inbox

Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail, then turn on Show To/Cc Labels (under Message List).

You can also view the To/Cc mailbox, which gathers all mail addressed to you. To show or hide it, tap Mailboxes, tap Edit, then select "To or Cc."

Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP

In an email, tap a person's name or email address, then do one of the following:

- To add them to your contacts, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.

  You can add a phone number, other email addresses, and more.

- To add them to your VIP list, tap Add to VIP.

Send email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, write and edit email from any of your email accounts, mark addresses from outside certain domains, use a custom email signature, and more.

Write an email message

1. Tap 📝.

2. Tap in the email, then type your message.

   💡 **Tip:** With the onscreen keyboard, try sliding your finger from one letter to the next to type, lifting your finger only after each word. (See Enter text using the onscreen keyboard.

3. To change the formatting, tap ⟡ in the format bar above the keyboard, then tap ⬚.

   You can change the font style, change the color of text, use a bold or italic stye, add a bulleted or numbered list, and more.

Add recipients

1. Tap in the To field, then type the names of recipients.

   As you type, Mail automatically suggests people from your Contacts, along with email addresses for the people who have more than one email address.

   You can also tap ⬚ to open Contacts and add recipients from there.

2. If you're sending a copy, tap the Cc/Bcc field.

3. Tap in the Cc field, then enter the names of people you're sending a copy to.

4. Tap in the Bcc field, then enter the names of people you don't want other recipients to see.

💡 **Tip:** After you enter recipients, you can reorder their names in the address fields, or drag them from one address field to another—for example, to the Bcc field if you decide you don't want their names to appear.

Use your camera to capture an email address

You can scan an email address printed on a business card, poster, and more using your Camera. This shortcut allows you to quickly begin emails without typing an address in manually (if you have iOS 10 or later).

1. Open Camera, then position iPhone so the email address appears within the camera frame.

2. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap <<icon coming soon>>.

3. Tap or use grab points to select the email address, then tap New Mail Message.

💡 **Tip:** You can use the same Live Text feature to pull an email address from a photo. See Use Live Text and Visual Look Up in Photos on iPhone.

Automatically send a copy to yourself

Go to Settings ⬚ > Mail, then turn on Always Bcc Myself (under Composing).

Add additional mail accounts

Go to Settings ⬚ > Mail > Accounts > Add Account, then choose an option.

Customize your email signature

You can customize the email signature that appears automatically at the bottom of every email you send.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail, then tap Signature (under Composing).

2. Tap in the text field at the top of the screen, then edit your signature.

   Only text is supported for Mail signatures.

   💡 **Tip:** If you have more than one email account, tap Per Account to set a different signature for each account.

Send an email from a different account

If you have more than one email account, you can specify which account to send email from.

From your email draft, tap the From field to choose an account.

Mark addresses outside certain domains

When you're addressing an email to a recipient who's not in your organization's domain, you can have the recipient's name appear in red to alert you.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail > Mark Addresses (under Composing).

2. Enter the domains that are in your organization—ones that you don't want marked in red.

   You can enter multiple domains separated by commas (for example, "apple.com, example.org").

   Any email sent to or from other domains is marked.

Reply to email in Mail on iPhone

With the Mail app 📧, you can reply to emails.

Reply to an email

1. Tap in the email, tap ⤺, then tap Reply.

2. Type your response.

   With the onscreen keyboard, try sliding your finger from one letter to the next to type without lifting your finger. (See Enter text using the onscreen keyboard.)

Quote some text when you reply to an email

When you reply to an email, you can include text from the sender to clarify what you're responding to.

1. In the sender's email, touch and hold the first word of the text, then drag to the last word. (See Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone.)

2. Tap ⟳, tap Reply, then type your message.

To turn off the indentation of quoted text, go to Settings ⚙ > Mail > Increase Quote Level.

Add attachments to an email on iPhone

In the Mail app ✉, you can attach photos, videos, scanned documents, and more to an email.

Attach a document to an email

You can attach a saved document to an email.

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the document, then tap 📄 in the format bar above the keyboard.

2. Tap ⬚ above the keyboard, then locate the document in [Files](#).

   In Files, tap Browse or Recent at the bottom of the screen, then tap a file, location, or folder to open it.

3. Tap the document to insert it into your email.

You can also drag a file to your email to attach it to the email.

Insert a saved photo or video

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the photo or video, then tap ⬚ in the format bar above the keyboard.

2. Tap ⬚ in the format bar, then locate the photo or video in the photo selector.

   You can swipe up to see more images.

3. Tap the photo or video to insert it into your email.

Take a photo or video to insert into an email

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the photo or video, then tap ⬚ above the keyboard.

2. Tap ⬚ above the keyboard, then take a new photo or video.

3. Tap Use Photo or Use Video to insert it into your email, or tap Retake if you want to reshoot it.

Scan a document into an email

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert the scanned document, then tap ⬚ above the keyboard.

2. Tap ⬚ above the keyboard.

3. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen—iPhone automatically captures the page.

   To capture the page manually, tap ⬚ or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap ⬚.

4. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

5. To make changes to the saved scan, tap it, then do any of the following:

- *Crop the image:* Tap 🔁.

- *Apply a filter:* Tap 🔳.

- *Rotate the image:* Tap 🔄.

- *Delete the scan:* Tap 🗑.

Mark up an attachment

You can use Markup to write or draw on a photo, video, or PDF attachment.

1. In the email, tap the attachment, then tap 🔳.

2. Using the drawing tools, draw with your finger.

3. When you're finished, tap Done.

See Draw in apps with Markup on iPhone.

Tap to add text, signatures, or shapes, or use the Magnifier.

Tap to choose a color.

Select a drawing tool, the eraser, or the selection tool.
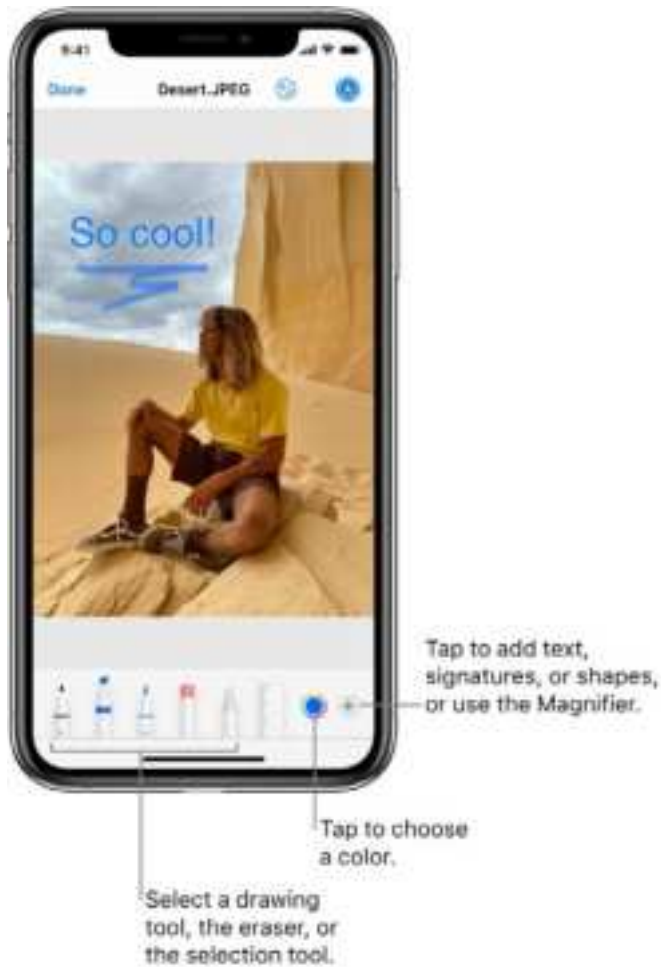
Draw in your email

1. Tap in the email where you want to insert a drawing, then tap ⌇ above the keyboard.

2. Tap ▦ in the format bar.

3. Choose a drawing tool and color, then write or draw with your finger.

   See Draw in apps with Markup on iPhone.

4. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap Insert Drawing.

To resume work on a drawing, tap the drawing, then tap ▦.

Work with email attachments on iPhone

In the Mail app ▦, preview, save, open, and annotate email attachments.

Preview an attachment

Touch and hold an attachment to preview it and see a list of actions you can perform.

Save a photo or video attachment to Photos

Touch and hold the photo or video, then tap Add to Photos.

Open an attachment with another app

1. Touch and hold the attachment until a menu appears.

2. Tap ![icon], then choose the app you want to use to open the attachment.

Note: Some attachments automatically show a banner with buttons you can use to open other apps.

See emails with attachments

1. In a mailbox, tap ![icon] to turn on filtering.

2. Tap "Filtered by," then turn on "Only Mail with Attachments."

You can also use the Attachments mailbox, which shows emails with attachments from all accounts. To view it, tap Mailboxes at the top left, tap Edit above the Mailboxes list, then select Attachments.

Send large attachments

Mail Drop is a feature you can use to send files exceeding the maximum size allowed by your email account.

To use Mail Drop, tap Send when you're ready to send an email with large attachments, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Mail must be turned on in Settings ![icon] > [*your name*] > iCloud. See the Apple Support article Mail Drop limits.

To learn how to send any attachment, see Add attachments to an email on iPhone.

Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app ![icon], you can save a draft to finish later, or look at existing emails while you're writing a new one.

Save a draft for later

If you're writing an email and want to finish it later, tap Cancel, then tap Save Draft. To resume work on a saved draft email, touch and hold 📧, then select a draft.

You can also swipe down on the title bar of an email you're writing to save it for later. When you're ready to return to your email, tap its title at the bottom of the screen.

With OS X 10.10 or later, you can also hand off unfinished emails with your Mac. See Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices.

Show draft emails from all of your accounts

If you have more than one email account, you can show draft emails from all your accounts.

1. Tap Mailboxes in the upper-left corner.

2. Tap Edit at the top of the list.

3. Tap Add Mailbox, then turn on the Drafts mailbox.

Search for email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, you can search for emails using different criteria.

Search for text in an email

1. From a mailbox list, tap in the search field, then type the text you're looking for.

2. Choose between searching all mailboxes or the current mailbox above the results list.

3. Tap an email in the results list to see it.

Searching looks at the address fields, the subject, and the email body. The most relevant emails appear in Top Hits above the search suggestions as you type.

Search by timeframe

From a mailbox list, tap in the search field, then type something like "February meeting" to find all emails from February with the word "meeting."

Search by email attributes

From a mailbox list, tap in the search field to search for emails by various attributes. Before you type, you may see suggested searches listed. Tap one of the listed items, or do any of the following:

- *Find all flagged emails:* Tap the search type "flag" in the search field, then tap Flagged Messages below Other.

- *Find all emails from people in your VIP list:* Type "vip" in the search field, then tap Messages from VIPs below Other.

- *Find all unread emails:* Type "unread" in the search field, then tap Unread Messages below Other.

- *Find all email with attachments:* Type "attachment" in the search field, then tap Messages with Attachments below Other.

Organize email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, manage your email in mailboxes.

Manage an email with a swipe

While viewing an email list you can use a simple swipe to move individual emails to the trash, mark them as read, and more.

To reveal a list of actions, slowly swipe an email to the left until you see the menu, then tap an item. To use the rightmost action, quickly swipe all the way to the left.

Swipe right to reveal one other action.

To choose the actions you want to appear in the menus, go to Settings ⚙ > Mail > Swipe Options (under Message List).

Organize your mail with mailboxes

You can view all your mailboxes, create a new one, or rename or delete one. (Some mailboxes can't be changed.)

1. Tap Mailboxes in the upper-left corner.

2. Tap Edit at the top of the list.

3. Select the checkboxes next to the mailboxes you want to view.

   💡 **Tip:** There are several smart mailboxes, such as Unread, that show emails from all your accounts.

4. To add a mailbox, tap New Mailbox at the bottom of the list.

5. Enter a name and specify a location, then tap Save.

Reorder your mailboxes

You can reorder your mailboxes so that the ones you use most often appear at the top of the Mailboxes list.

1. Tap Mailboxes in the upper-left corner, then tap Edit.

2. Touch and hold ≡ next to a mailbox until it lifts up, then drag it to the position you want.

Move or mark multiple emails

1. While viewing a list of emails, tap Edit.

2. Select the emails you want to move or mark by tapping their checkboxes.

   💡 **Tip:** To select multiple emails quickly, swipe down through the checkboxes.

3. Choose the action you want to perform on all the selected emails.

Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, Mail Privacy Protection helps protect your privacy by preventing email senders from learning information about your Mail activity. If you choose to turn it on, it hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or determine your location. It also prevents senders from seeing if you've opened their email.

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Mail > Privacy Protection.

2. Turn on Protect Mail Activity.

See Block email from specified senders

Flag and filter emails on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, you can flag and filter your emails and choose what mailboxes can send you notifications

Flag an email

You can flag an email to make it easier to find later.

1. Open the email, tap ⬚, then tap Flag.

2. To choose a color for the flag, tap a colored dot.

   To change or remove a flag, open the email, tap ⬚, then select another color, or tap ⬚.

Flags you add to an email appear on that email in Mail on all your Apple devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Create a Flagged Mailbox

Find your flagged emails easily by accessing them all from one mailbox. To add a Flagged mailbox, tap Mailboxes in the upper-left corner of the screen. Tap Edit, then select Flagged.

Flag emails from your VIPs

Add important people to your VIP list, so their emails appear with a VIP flag and in the VIP mailbox.

1. While viewing an email, tap the name or email address of a person in the email.

2. Tap Add to VIP.

Get notified of replies to an email or thread

You can create mail notifications that let you know when you receive emails in favorite mailboxes or from your VIPs..

- *When reading an email:* Tap ⬚, then tap Notify Me.

- *When writing an email:* Tap the Subject field, tap ⬚ in the Subject field, then tap Notify Me.

To change how notifications appear, go to Settings ⬚ > Notifications > Mail, then turn on Allow Notifications.

Mute email notifications

To reduce interruptions from busy email threads, you can mute notifications of the messages in the conversations.

1. Open an email in the conversation.

2. Tap ⬚, then tap Mute.

To specify what you want done with emails you muted, go to Settings ⬚ > Mail > Muted Thread Action, then select an option.

Block email from specified senders

To block a sender, tap their email address, then select "Block this Contact."

Manage junk mail

To move an email to the Junk folder, open it, tap ⬛, then tap Move to Junk.

Filter emails

You can use filters to temporarily show only certain messages—the ones that meet all the criteria you select in the filter list. For example, if you select "Unread" and "Only Mail with Attachments," you see only unread emails that have attachments.

1. Tap ⬛ in the bottom-left corner of a mailbox list.

2. Tap Filtered by.

3. Select or turn on the criteria for emails you want to view.

4. To turn off all filters, tap ⬛. To turn off a specific filter, tap Filtered by and deselect it.

Delete and recover emails in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app ⬛, delete emails you no longer need.

Delete emails

There are multiple ways to delete emails. Do any of the following:

- *While viewing an email:* Tap ⬛ at the bottom of the email.

- *While viewing the email list:* Swipe an email left, then choose Trash from the menu.

  To delete the email in a single gesture, swipe it all the way to the left.

- *Delete multiple emails at once:* While viewing a list of emails, tap Edit, select the emails you want to delete, then tap Trash.

  To select multiple emails quickly, swipe down through the checkboxes.

To turn the confirmation of deletion on or off, go to Settings ⬛ > Mail, then turn on or off Ask Before Deleting

(under Messages).

Recover a deleted email

1. Go to the account's Trash mailbox, then open the email.

2. Tap 🔷, then move the message to another mailbox.

Archive instead of delete

Instead of deleting emails, you can archive them in the Archive mailbox.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Mail, then tap Accounts.

2. Tap your email account, tap Mail (below Advanced), then tap Advanced.

3. In the Advanced settings, change the destination mailbox for discarded emails to Archive Mailbox.

When this option is turned on, to delete an email instead of archiving it, touch and hold 📧, then tap Trash Message.

Decide how long to keep deleted emails

You can set how long deleted emails stay in the Trash mailbox.

1. Go to Settings 🔘 > Mail, then tap Accounts.

2. Tap your email account, tap Mail (below Advanced), then tap Advanced.

3. In the Advanced settings, tap Remove, then select a time interval.

Note: Some email services might override your selection; for example, iCloud doesn't keep deleted emails longer than 30 days, even if you select Never.

Add a Mail widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Widgets show you current information from your favorite apps at a glance. On iPhone, you can add a Mail widget and customize which mailbox it shows on your Home Screen. Choose between displaying recent unread emails, new emails from your VIPs, or any other mailbox. To add a widget, see Use widgets on your iPhone and iPod touch.

Print an email or attachment in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app 📧, you can print an email or an attachment.

Print an email

In the email, tap 🔷, then tap Print.

Print an attachment or picture

Tap an attachment to view it, tap 📄, then choose Print.

Maps

View maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can find your location on a map and zoom in and out to see the detail you need.

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Allow Maps to use your precise location

To find your location and provide accurate directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be on.

- *If Maps displays a message that Location Services is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, then turn on Location Services.

- *If Maps displays a message that Precise Location is off:* Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, tap Location, then turn on Precise Location.

Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone).

Note: Apple is committed to keeping personal information about your location safe and private. To learn more, go to Settings ⚙ > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps and Privacy.

Show your current location

Tap 📍.

Your position is marked in the middle of the map. The top of the map is north. To show your heading instead of north at the top, tap 📍. To resume showing north, tap 🧭 or 🗺.

Choose the right map

The button at the top right of a map indicates if the current map is for exploring 🏙, driving 🚗, riding transit 🚆, or viewing from a satellite 🛰.

1. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right.

2. Choose a map, then tap ✕.

View a 3D map

On a 2D map, drag two fingers up.

On a 3D map, you can do the following:

- *Adjust the angle:* Drag two fingers up or down.

- *See buildings and other small features in 3D:* Zoom in.

- *Return to a 2D map:* Tap 2D near the top right.

Move, zoom, and rotate a map or a 3D globe

- *Move around in a map:* Drag the map.

- *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap (leaving your finger on the screen after the second tap), then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out. Or, pinch open or closed on the map.

  On a 2D map, a scale appears in the upper left while you zoom. To change the unit of distance, go to Settings > Maps, then select In Miles or In Kilometers.

- *Rotate the map:* Touch and hold the map with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.

  To show north at the top of the screen after you rotate the map, tap .

- *View the earth with an interactive 3D globe:* Zoom out until the map changes to a globe. Drag the globe to rotate it, or zoom in or out to explore details for mountain ranges, deserts, oceans, and more (supported models).

Add a name to Maps, or report a issue with Maps

1. Tap your profile picture next to the search field at the bottom of a map, then tap Reports.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose one of the options, then provide your information.

Find places

Search for places in Maps on iPhone

You can use the Maps app to search for addresses, landmarks, services, and more.

Search for a place

 Ask Siri. Say something like: "Show me the Golden Gate Bridge." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or you can tap the search field (at the top of the search card), then begin typing.

You can search in different ways. For example:

- Intersection ("8th and Market")

- Area ("Greenwich Village")

- Landmark ("Guggenheim")

- Zip code ("60622")

- Business ("movies," "restaurants San Francisco CA," "Apple Inc New York")

If you get a list of results, scroll the list to see more. To learn about a place or get directions to it, tap a search result.

Display, grow, or shrink the search card

If you see a place card, route card, or other instead of the search card, tap ⊠ at the top right of the card.

To grow or shrink the search card, drag the bottom of the search card down or up.

Quickly find or delete recent searches

To get a list of recent search results, scroll down in the search card to Recents.

To delete an item from the list, swipe the item left. Or tap More directly above the list, then do one of the following:

- *Delete a group:* Tap Clear above the group.

- *Delete a single item:* Swipe the item left.

See Delete significant locations on iPhone and Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone.

Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

Find a nearby attraction, restaurant, or other service

🎙 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Find a gas station" or "Find coffee near me." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or without asking Siri, you can tap the search field, then do one of the following:

- Tap a category like Grocery Stores or Restaurants in the Find Nearby section of the search card.

- Enter something like "playgrounds" or "parks" in the search field, then tap the Search Nearby result.

To change the nearby area, drag the map.

Depending on what you look for, you may be able to apply more search criteria, tap an item to get more information, and more.

Note: Nearby suggestions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find your way around an airport or shopping mall

1. Do one of the following:

   - *When you're at the airport or mall:* Open Maps, tap 🗺️, then tap Look Inside—or zoom in, then tap the Browse button (below the search field).

   - *Before you get there:* Search for the airport or mall in Maps, or drag the map to show it. Zoom in, then tap Look Inside—or zoom in, then tap the Browse button (below the search field).

2. To find nearby services, tap a category (like Food, Restrooms, or Gates) on the place card, then scroll down to see all results.

   To get more information about a result, tap it.

3. To get a map of a different floor, tap the button showing the floor level (zoom in if you don't see the button).

Note: Indoor maps are available for select airports and shopping malls. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

You can find street addresses and other information about places that appear in the Maps app 🗺️.

Get information about a place

Tap the place (for example, a city or landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps), then do any of the following:

- *Get a route to the location:* Tap the directions button.

- *View more information:* Scroll down in the place card.

  The information might include the street address, a phone number, a webpage link, business hours, and customer reviews. Many restaurants and other businesses [offer App Clips](#) that allow you to order or make a reservation by tapping buttons on their place cards.

- *Close the place card:* Tap ✕.

Note: If you install an app that has a table booking extension, it can also help you make reservations at restaurants. If you want to stop sending it the names of restaurants that you view, go to 🔘 > Maps > Restaurant Booking, then turn off the app extension.

Save information about a place

You can save a place as one of [your favorites](#), in one of your [My Guides](#), and as one of your [contacts](#).

Tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps, tap ••• (to the right of the directions button on the place card), then choose an option.

Mark places in Maps on iPhone

You can mark places in the Maps app 🗺️ with pins to help you find those places later.

💡 **Tip:** To quickly mark your location so you can find your way back later, touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then choose Mark My Location. See Perform quick actions on iPhone.

Mark an unlabeled location

Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then do any of the following:

- *Refine the location:* Tap Move, then drag the map.

- *Save the location to your favorites:* Tap 🔹 (next to the directions button on the place card), then Tap Add to Favorites. (You can give the location a name in your Favorites.)

- *Save the location to a guide you created:* Tap 🔹, tap Guides, choose a guide, enter a name for the location, then tap Save. See Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone.

- *Close the place card:* Tap ✖️.

Delete a pin marker

1. Tap the marker.

2. Scroll down the place card, then tap Remove.

You can also touch and hold the marker, then tap Remove Pin.

Share places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can share places with others. For example, you can send a message or email to show people where to meet you.

💡 **Tip:** To quickly share your current location, touch and hold Maps on the Home Screen, then tap Send My Location. See Perform quick actions from the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Tap a place on the map or a search result in Maps.

2. Tap 🔹 (to the right of the directions button on the place card).

3. Tap Share, then choose an option.

You can also touch and hold the place, then tap Share Location.

Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can save places—such as your home, your work, and where you go for coffee—to your favorites list. You can quickly find your favorites on the search card.

💡 **Tip:** To make Home and Work automatically appear as favorites, add your work and home addresses to My Card in Contacts.

Add a place to your favorites

1. In the row of Favorites on the search card, tap ✛.

   If you don't see ✛, swipe the Favorites row left.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Choose a suggestion below the search field.

   - Enter a place or address in the search field, then choose a search result.

You can also tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps, tap ••• (to the right of the directions button on the place card), then tap Add to Favorites.

Quickly find your favorites

A row of Favorites appears near the top of the search card.

To see more, swipe the row left, or tap More above the row.

Edit a favorite

1. On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites.

2. Tap 🔷 next to the favorite.

3. Depending on the location, you may be able to make the following changes:

   - *Rename the favorite:* Tap the title, then enter a new name.

   - *Change the address:* Tap the address, then tap Open Contact Card.

   - *Change the label:* Tap a label type.

   - *Tell someone your ETA:* Tap Add Person, then choose one or more suggested contacts, or search for a contact. Whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to this location, the person automatically receives a notification about your estimated time of arrival (ETA). See Share your ETA.

4. Tap Done.

Refine your home or work location

If Maps isn't precisely locating your home or work place, you can help improve directions to and from your home or work by correcting the location.

1. On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites, then tap ⬛ next to Home or Work.

2. Tap Refine Location on Map, drag the map to move the marker over the correct location, then tap Done.

Delete a place from your favorites

On the search card, tap More above the row of favorites, then swipe the item left.

Explore new places with Guides in Maps on iPhone

Guides from trusted brands and partners are available in the Maps app 🗺️ to help you discover great places around the world to eat, shop, and explore. Guides are automatically updated when new places are added, so you always have the latest recommendations.

Explore cities of the world with Guides

Scroll down in the search card, then tap Explore Guides.

You can tap options to browse by interest, publisher, city, and more. For example, to browse guides for locations worldwide, tap 🌐 at the top of the screen.

View, share, and save a Guide

To open a Guide, tap its cover. To view its contents, scroll down.

You can also do the following:

- *Save the Guide:* Scroll to the top of the guide, then tap 📑.

  It's saved in your collection of My Guides. See [Organize places in My Guides](#).

- *Share the Guide:* Scroll to the top of the Guide, tap 📤, then choose an option.

- *Add a destination to My Guides:* Tap ➕, then select one of your guides.

- *Close the guide:* Tap ✕.

💡 **Tip:** [Look for App Clips](#) buttons that allow you to do things like reserve a table directly from a guide.

Guides are available for many cities worldwide, with more places coming.

Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can organize places into your own guides for easy reference. For example, you can add destinations for an upcoming vacation into a guide named *Summer Road Trip*. You can quickly get to your guides from the search card, and you can share your guides with others.

Create a guide

Scroll down in the search card, tap New Guide, enter a name, then tap Create.

Add a place to My Guides

1. Tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps.

2. Tap 🚗 (to the right of the directions button on the place card).

3. Tap Guides, then choose one of your guides.

You can also add editorially curated Guides to My Guides. See Explore new places with Guides in Maps on iPhone.

Share a guide

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Guides.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose a guide.

3. Tap 🏙️ at the bottom of the guide card, then choose an option.

Edit a guide that you created

For any guide that you create, you can supply a cover image, rename the title, and add or remove places.

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Guides.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Choose a guide that you created.

3. Tap Edit at the bottom of the guide card.

4. Make your changes, then tap ✖️ at the top right of the guide card.

Get traffic and weather info in Maps on iPhone

Find out about traffic conditions

With a map showing, tap the button at the top right, choose Driving or Satellite, then tap ⬙.

1. Orange indicates slowdowns, and red indicates stop-and-go traffic.

2. To get an incident report, tap an incident marker.

   Incident markers show information such as hazards 🚧, road closures 🚫, road construction 🚧, accidents 💥, and more.

You can also report traffic incidents.

Note: Traffic features and information are not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Find out about the weather

Zoom in on a map until the weather icon appears in the lower-right corner; the icon shows the current conditions for that area. In some regions, the air quality index also appears in the lower-right corner.

To get the hourly forecast, touch and hold the weather icon. Tap the hourly forecast to get a multiday forecast in the Weather app.

If you don't want to get the weather information or the air quality index in Maps, go to Settings ⚙ > Maps, then turn off Weather Conditions or Air Quality Index.

Delete significant locations on iPhone

The Maps app 🗺 keeps track of the places you recently visited, as well as when and how often you visited them. Maps uses this information to provide you with personalized services like predictive traffic routing. You can delete this information.

Note: Significant locations are end-to-end encrypted and cannot be read by Apple.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Privacy > Location Services > System Services, then tap Significant Locations.

2. Do one of the following:

   - *Delete a single location:* Tap the location, tap Edit, then tap 💥.

   - *Delete all locations:* Tap Clear History. This action clears all your significant locations on any devices that are signed in with the same Apple ID.

Quickly find your Maps settings on iPhone

You can quickly find your settings for preferences, guides, favorites, and more in the Maps app 🗺️.

Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then choose an option.

To find more Maps settings, choose Preferences, scroll down, then tap Maps Settings at the bottom of the screen.

If you don't see your profile picture or initials next to the search field, tap Cancel next to the field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

Get directions

Use Siri, Maps, and the Maps widget to get directions on iPhone

You can get travel directions in the Maps app 🗺️ in several ways.

Important: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see View or change cellular data settings on iPhone).

Get directions from Siri

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Get directions to the nearest coffee shop"

- "Find a charging station"

- "Give me directions home"

Learn how to ask Siri

💡 **Tip:** To use "home" or "work" when asking Siri or searching in Maps, add your home and work addresses to My Card in Contacts.

Get directions in Maps

1. Do one of the following:

   - Tap a destination (for example, a landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps).

   - Touch and hold anywhere on the map.

   - Tap the search field, begin typing, then tap a result.

2. Tap the directions button on the place card.

   After you tap the button, you can choose a different mode of travel, a different starting point, and other options. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

Use the Maps widget

To quickly get directions to a likely destination and track your ETA during navigation, add the Maps widget to your Home screen.

Choose your default mode of travel

Maps defaults to your preference when providing directions. To change your preference, do the following:

1. Tap your profile picture or initials at the top right of the search card, then tap Preferences.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Tap Driving, Walking, Transit, or Cycling.

Depending on your mode of travel, you may be able to share your ETA, find a place to stop, and more while following directions. See Things you can do while following a route in Maps on iPhone.

Select other route options in Maps on iPhone

With a route showing in the Maps app 🗺, you can select various options before you tap Go.

- *Choose an alternate route:* If alternate routes appear on the map, you can tap one to select it (or tap Go next to its description in the route card). When you tap any part of an alternative route, its estimated travel time appears at the top of the route card.

- *Get travel time estimates for alternate routes:* Scroll down in the route card.

- *Reverse the starting point and destination:* Tap My Location (near the top of the route card), then tap 🔄.

- *Choose a different starting point or destination:* Tap My Location, tap either the From or To field, then enter a different location.

- *Switch to a different mode of travel:* Tap 🚗, 🚶, 🚌, 🚴, or 🚕 (ridesharing not available in all countries or regions).

- *View a route's directions in a list:* On the route card, tap the route's estimated travel time so that the route appears at the top of the card, then tap the estimated travel time again. To share the directions, scroll to the bottom of the card, then tap Share. When you're finished, tap Done.

Depending on the mode of travel, you may have other route options, such as choosing an arrival time when driving, avoiding heavy traffic when cycling, or choosing which transit vehicles you prefer.

Things you can do while following a route in Maps on iPhone

Depending on your mode of travel, you may be able to do the following while following driving, walking, and cycling directions in the Maps app 🗺️.

End directions before you arrive

Say something like "Hey Siri, stop navigating." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or without asking Siri, you can tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

Get an overview of your route

Tap 🗺️. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap 🔺.

View a list of upcoming directions

Tap the banner at the top of the screen. Scroll down to see more directions. When finished, tap 🔀.

Share your ETA

You can let others know your estimated time of arrival (ETA).

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like "Share my ETA." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or without asking Siri, you can do the following:

1. With turn-by-turn directions showing, tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share ETA.

2. Choose one or more suggested contacts, or tap Open Contacts to find a contact.

You can also add a location to your Favorites, then add a contact to automatically receive your ETA whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to that location.

To stop sending ETA information, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap a name.

People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message.

Note: Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.

To turn off Share ETA, go to Settings ⚙️ > Maps.

Find places to stop

While following turn-by-turn directions on your driving or cycling route, you can get directions to food, services, and more.

1. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap Add a Stop, then tap a category.

3. Tap Go for one of the nearby suggestions.

4. To get directions again to your original destination, tap Resume Route at the top of the screen.

Turn spoken directions on or off

With turn-by-turn directions showing, tap the spoken directions button (below), then choose a setting. When appears on the map, spoken directions are turned on.

When following driving directions, you can choose to turn off all spoken directions or all spoken directions except alerts.

Change other settings for spoken directions

In Settings , you can choose whether to pause spoken audio (like podcasts and audio books) during spoken directions and whether to wake iPhone for spoken directions. When iPhone is connected to a compatible car's audio system, you can also choose to hear spoken directions while listening to the radio.

Go to Settings > Maps > Spoken Directions, then select your options.

Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app , you can get detailed driving directions to your destination.

When you drive in select cities, you see enhanced details for crosswalks, bike lanes, buildings, and a street-level perspective that helps you find the right lane as you approach complex interchanges (supported models). See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get directions for driving

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like: "Give me driving directions home." Learn how to ask Siri.

   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do any of the following:

   - *Switch to driving directions:* If driving isn't your default mode of travel, tap 🚗 to see a suggested driving route.

   - *Choose a future departure or arrival time:* Tap Leaving Now (near the top of the route card), select a time or date for departure or arrival, then tap Done. The estimated travel time may change based on predicted traffic.

   - *Avoid tolls or highways:* Scroll to the bottom of the route card, then turn on an option.

   - *Choose other route options:* You can reverse the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

   As you travel along your route, Maps speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

While following the route, you may be able to share your ETA, get an overview of your route, report hazards, and more. See Things you can do while following a route in Maps on iPhone.

When Driving Focus is turned on, or if iPhone locks automatically, Maps remains onscreen and continues to speak directions. Even if you open another app, you continue to receive turn-by-turn directions. (To return to Maps from another app, tap the directions banner at the top of the screen or the navigation indicator <<IL_HotspotIndicator: N/A>> in the status bar.)

Report traffic incidents

In select regions and countries, you can report accidents, hazards, speed checks, and road work (features vary by region and country).

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Report an accident"

- "There's something on the road."

- "There's a speed check here."

Learn how to ask Siri

Or without asking Siri, you can do the following:

- *When following turn-by-turn driving directions:* Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.

- *When not following directions:* Tap your profile picture next to the search field, then tap Reports, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.

   If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers—such as for hazards 🚧 and accidents 🚗—are displayed in Maps for other users too.

Note: Speed checks, where supported, are not displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you follow turn-by-turn directions.

Report on the status of a hazard or accident

A map may display hazard 🚧 and accident 🚗 markers. When you're near the incidents in select countries or regions, you can report whether they cleared.

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like "The hazard is gone" or "Clear the accident." Learn how to ask Siri.

Or without asking Siri, you can do the following:

1. Tap the incident marker.

2. Tap Cleared or Still Here.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in reports that an incident has been cleared, its marker is removed from Maps.

Note: You can't clear reports of speed checks.

Find your parked car

When you disconnect iPhone from your car's Bluetooth or CarPlay system and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker is dropped in Maps so you can easily find the way back to your car.

To find your car, choose Parked Car below Siri Suggestions on the search card.

To turn parking location off, go to Settings 🔧 > Maps, then turn off Show Parked Location.

Show or hide the compass or the speed limit

Go to Settings 🔧 > Maps, tap Driving (below Directions), then turn Compass or Speed Limit on or off.

Turn-by-turn spoken directions are not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can get detailed cycling directions. Maps offers routes on bike paths, bike lanes, and bike-friendly roads (when available). You can preview the elevation for your ride, check how busy a road is, and choose a route that best avoids hills.

As you travel along your route, Maps speaks cycling-specific directions for turns and maneuvers. With a handlebar mount for iPhone, you can glance at the directions on the iPhone screen. Or with Apple Watch, you can glance at them on your wrist. (Handlebar mount and Apple Watch sold separately.)

Note: Cycling directions are available in select areas. Features vary by country and region. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get directions for cycling

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like "Hey Siri, give me cycling directions home." Learn how to ask Siri.

   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do the following:

   - *Switch to cycling directions:* If cycling isn't your default mode of travel, tap ▨ to see a suggested cycling route.

   - *Avoid hills or busy roads:* Scroll down in the route card, then turn on an option.

   - *Choose other route options:* You can reverse the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

While following the route, you may be able to share your ETA, get an overview of your route, find places to stop, and more. See Things you can do while following a route in Maps on iPhone.

Turn-by-turn voice navigation is not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app ▨, you can get detailed walking directions to your destination.

On supported models and in select areas, you can view immersive walking instructions that use the iPhone camera and augmented reality to show you where to turn.

Get directions for walking

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like "Hey Siri, give me walking directions home." Learn how to ask Siri.

   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do the following:

   - *Switch to walking directions:* If walking isn't your default mode of travel, tap 🚶 to see a suggested walking route.

   - *Choose other route options:* You can reverse the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

4. To view directions in augmented reality, tap 📲, then follow the onscreen instructions. To return to the map, tap ✕.

   Note: To automatically return to the augmented reality screen whenever you raise iPhone after tapping 📲, go to Settings ⚙ > Maps > Walking, then turn on Raise to View.

While following the route, you can share your ETA, get an overview of your route, and more. See Things you can do while following a route in Maps on iPhone.

To improve the accuracy of your position and heading while walking, iPhone uses the camera and the motion sensors (iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone SE 2nd generation, and models with Face ID). This feature may increase battery usage. To turn this feature off, go to Settings ⚙ > Maps > Walking (below Directions), then turn off Enhanced.

Turn-by-turn voice navigation and augmented reality are not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺, you can get detailed transit directions to your destination.

Find a transit route

1. Do one of the following:

   - Say something like "Hey Siri, give me transit directions to the Ferry Building." Learn how to ask Siri.

     Note: Siri transit directions are not available in all countries or regions.

   - Tap your destination (such as a search result in Maps or a landmark on a map), or touch and hold anywhere on the map, then tap the directions button.

2. When a suggested route appears, you can do any of the following:

   - *Switch to transit directions:* If transit isn't your default mode of travel, tap ▣ to see a suggested transit route.

   - *Choose a future departure or arrival time:* Tap Leaving Now (near the top of the route card), select a time or date for departure or arrival, then tap Done.

   - *Select which transit vehicles you prefer:* Scroll to the bottom of the route card, then select your preferences.

   - *Choose other route options:* You can reverse the starting point and destination, select a different starting point or destination, and more. See Select other route options in Maps on iPhone.

3. Tap Go for the route you want.

To get upcoming directions during your trip, scroll down in the route card. Tap a direction on the route card to remove the preceding directions. To end directions before you arrive, say something like "Hey Siri, stop navigating,", or tap ▧ on the route card.

Quickly find nearby transit departures in Favorites

You can get one-tap access to the departure times for stops and stations near you.

- *Add Nearby Transit to Favorites:* In the row of Favorites on the search card, tap ✛, tap Nearby Transit, then tap Done. (If you don't see ✛, swipe the Favorites row left.)

- *View upcoming departures:* Tap Transit in the row of Favorites on the search card.

- *Choose a line to appear at the top of the Nearby Transit list:* Tap Transit in the row of Favorites on the search card, touch and hold a line, then tap Pin. (To remove the pin, touch and hold the line again, then tap Remove Pin.)

Add a transit station or stop to Favorites

1. Do one of the following:

   - Use Siri or search to find a transit station or stop.

   - View a transit map, zoom in or move the map until you see the transit stop or station, then tap the transit stop or station.

2. Tap ▪▪ (to the right of the directions button on the place card), then Tap Add to Favorites.

See the major transit lines

1. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right.

2. Select Transit, then tap ⛶.

Public transportation information is not available in all countries or regions. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone

The Maps app 🗺️ can help you plan trips that include stops for charging your electric vehicle.

Note: Electric vehicle routing requires a compatible vehicle.

Install your vehicle's app on your iPhone

1. In the App Store, search for the manufacturer of your vehicle.

2. Download the app that supports EV routing for your vehicle.

3. Open the app, then follow its setup instructions.

See Get apps in the App Store on iPhone.

Connect Maps to your vehicle's EV routing app

1. In Maps, tap your profile picture or initials at the top right of the search card.

    If you don't see your profile picture or initials, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

2. Tap Vehicles, then tap Connect Your Electric Vehicles.

3. Choose your vehicle, then follow the onscreen instructions.

When you get driving directions, Maps can track your vehicle's charge. By analyzing elevation changes along the route and other factors, Maps identifies appropriate charging stations along the way. If you drive until your charge gets too low, you're offered a route you to the nearest compatible charging station.

Choose a different vehicle when you get directions

If you drive multiple vehicles, you can change which vehicle Maps provides routing instructions for.

1. Get driving directions.

2. Before you tap Go, scroll down in the route card.

3. Choose another electric vehicle, or if you're driving a vehicle that doesn't have an EV routing app on your iPhone, tap Different Car.

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone

You can delete directions that you recently viewed in the Maps app 🗺.

Scroll down in the search card to Recents, then do one of the following:

- Swipe a recent route left.

- Tap More directly above the list, then swipe a recent route left, or to delete a group of routes, tap Clear above the group.

Use Maps on your Mac to get directions for iPhone

Before a big trip or a day of cycling, you can plan your route on your Mac, and then share the details to your iPhone. The larger screen on your Mac can help you look around and see what's ahead, and for some locations you can get an interactive 3D view. You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both your Mac and your iPhone.

---

1. In Maps on your Mac, create a route for your trip.

   For information, see Plan a route on your Mac in the Maps User Guide.

2. Choose File > Share > Send to [*your device*].

You can also use Handoff to send directions from iPhone to Mac. See Hand off tasks between iPhone and your other devices.

Take tours

Look around streets in Maps on iPhone

You can view cities in the Maps app 🗺 in interactive 3D that lets you pan 360 degrees and move through the streets.

---

1. In select cities, tap 🏙 near the bottom of a map.

2. To change the view, do any of the following:

   - *Pan:* Drag a finger left or right.

   - *Move forward:* Tap the scene.

   - *Zoom in or out:* Pinch open or closed.

   - *Switch to or from full-screen view:* Tap 🔲 or 🔳.

   - *View another point of interest:* Switch from full-screen view, then tap elsewhere on the map.

   - *Hide labels in full-screen view:* Tap the place card at the bottom of the screen, then tap 🔲.

3. When finished, tap Done.

Look Around is available in select cities. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Take Flyover tours in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can fly over many of the world's major landmarks and cities. Flyover landmarks are identified by the Flyover button on their place cards.

View a city or landmark from above

1. Use the button at the top right to select any map except Transit.

2. Tap the name of a city or the name of a landmark.

3. Tap Flyover on the place card.

4. Do any of the following:

    - *Change viewing direction:* Point or tilt iPhone in the direction you want to view.

    - *Move around:* Drag a finger in any direction. To rotate perspective, touch and hold the screen with one finger, then continue holding it in place while you drag another finger around it.

    - *Watch an aerial 3D tour:* Tap Start Tour or Start City Tour in the card at the bottom of the screen. (If you don't see the card, tap anywhere on the screen.)

5. To return to the map, tap 🔲 (tap anywhere on the screen if you don't see 🔲).

For a list of sites with Flyover, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Book rides in Maps on iPhone

In the Maps app 🗺️, you can request a ride with a compatible ridesharing app (not available in all countries or regions). If you don't have one installed, Maps shows you apps that are available from the App Store.

[Find your destination](#), tap Directions, then tap 🚶 (at the bottom right).

To estimate wait times and fares with ride sharing apps, Maps may share your location with these apps. To stop sharing your location with a ride sharing app, go to ⚙️ > Maps > Ride Booking, then turn off the app.

Measure

Measure dimensions with iPhone

Use the Measure app 📷 and your iPhone camera to measure nearby objects. iPhone automatically detects the dimensions of rectangular objects, or you can manually set the start and end points of a measurement.

For best results, use Measure on well-defined objects located 0.5 to 3 meters (2 to 10 feet) from iPhone.

Note: Measurements are approximate.

Start a measurement

1. Open Measure 📷, then use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.

2. Position iPhone so that the object you want to measure appears on the screen.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Measure to take measurements, a green dot appears at the top of the screen to indicate your camera is in use.

Take an automatic rectangle measurement

1. When iPhone detects the edges of a rectangular object, a white box frames the object; tap the white box or ⬜ to see the dimensions.

2. To take a photo of your measurement, tap 📷.

Take a manual measurement

1. Align the dot at the center of the screen with the point where you want to start measuring, then tap ⬜.

2. Slowly pan iPhone to the end point, then tap ⬜ to see the measured length.

3. To take a photo of your measurement, tap 📷.

4. Take another measurement, or tap Clear to start over.

Use edge guides

On iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can easily measure the height and straight edges of furniture, countertops, and other objects using guide lines that appear automatically.

1. Position the dot at the center of the screen along the straight edge of an object until a guide appears.

2. Tap ⬜ where you want to begin measuring.

3. Slowly pan along the guide, then tap ⬜ at the endpoint to see the measured length.

4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap 📷.

Use Ruler view

On iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can see more detail in your measurements with Ruler view.

1. After measuring the distance between two points, move iPhone closer to the measurement line until it transforms into a ruler, showing incremental inches and feet.

2. To take a photo of your measurement, tap 📷.

View and save measurements on iPhone

In the Measure app 🟫 on iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can save a list of all the measurements you take in a single session, complete with screenshots, so you can easily share and access them whenever you need them.

1. Tap 🟫 to see a list of your recent measurements.

   Swipe up from the top of the list to see more measurements.

2. To save the measurements, tap Copy, open another app (for example, Notes), tap in a document, then tap Paste.

   Note: Height measurements aren't included in this list. To save a person's height measurement, see Measure a person's height.

Measure a person's height with iPhone

On iPhone 12 Pro and iPhone 12 Pro Max, you can use the Measure app 🟫 to instantly measure a person's height from the floor to the top of their head, hair, or hat. (You can even measure the seated height of a person in a chair.)

1. Position iPhone so that the person you want to measure appears on the screen from head to toe.

   After a moment, a line appears at the top of the person's head (or hair, or hat), with the height measurement showing just below the line.

2. To take a photo of the measurement, tap ⬚.

3. To save the photo, tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, tap Done, then choose Save to Photos or Save to Files.

   You can easily access and share the height measurement image from Photos or Files on iPhone whenever you want.

To take the measurement again, turn iPhone away for a moment to reset the height.

Use iPhone as a level

Use your iPhone to determine whether an object near you is level, straight, or flat (measurements are approximate).
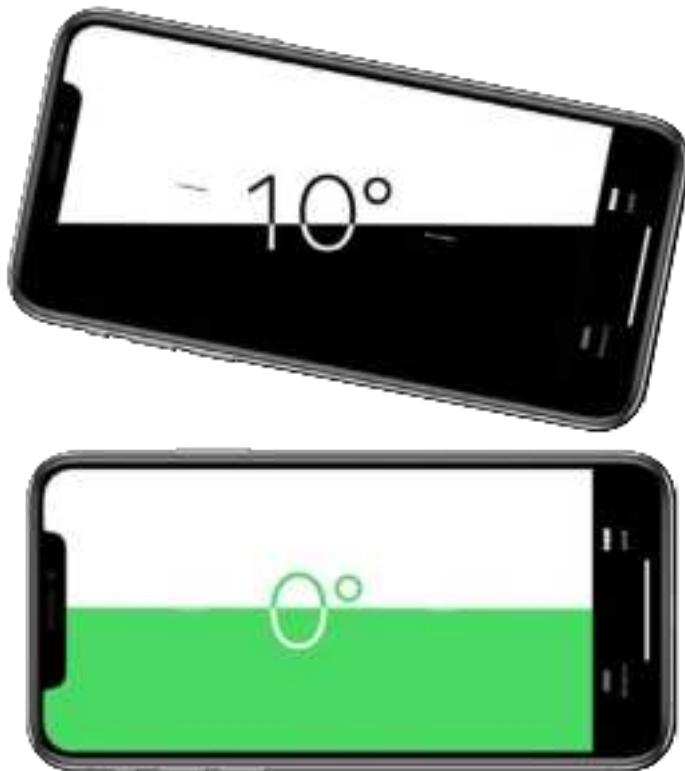
1. Open Measure.

2. Tap Level, then hold iPhone against an object, such as a picture frame.

- *Make an object level:* Rotate the object and iPhone until you see green.

- *Match the slope:* Tap the screen to capture the slope of the first object. Hold iPhone against another object and rotate them until the screen turns green.

  To reset the level, tap the screen again.

Messages

Set up Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app 💬, you can send text messages as SMS/MMS messages through your cellular service, or with iMessage over Wi-Fi or cellular service to people who use iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or a Mac. Texts you send and receive using iMessage don't count against your SMS/MMS allowances in your cellular messaging plan, but cellular data rates may apply.

iMessage texts can include photos, videos, and other info. You can see when other people are typing, and send read receipts to let them know when you've read their messages. For security, messages sent using iMessage are encrypted before they're sent.

iMessage texts appear in blue bubbles, and SMS/MMS texts appear in green bubbles. See the Apple Support article About iMessage and SMS/MMS.

Sign in to iMessage

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Messages.

2. Turn on iMessage.

Sign in to iMessage on your Mac and other Apple devices using the same Apple ID

If you sign in to iMessage with the same Apple ID on all your devices, all the messages that you send and receive on iPhone also appear on your other Apple devices. Send a message from whichever device is closest to you, or use Handoff to start a conversation on one device and continue it on another.

1. On your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, go to Settings ⚙️ > Messages, then turn on iMessage.

2. On your Mac, open Messages, then do one of the following:

- If you're signing in for the first time, enter your Apple ID and password, then click Sign In.

- If you signed in before and want to use a different Apple ID, choose Messages > Preferences, click iMessage, then click Sign Out.

With Continuity, all the SMS/MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone also appear on your other iOS devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Apple Watch.

Use Messages in iCloud

Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Messages (if it's not already turned on).

Every message you send and receive on your iPhone is saved in iCloud. And, when you sign in with the same Apple ID on a new device that also has Messages in iCloud turned on, all your conversations show up there automatically.

Because your messages and any attachments are stored in iCloud, you may have more free space on your iPhone when you need it. Message bubbles, whole conversations, and attachments you delete from iPhone are also deleted from your other Apple devices (iOS 11.4, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.13.5, or later) where Messages in iCloud is turned on.

See the Apple Support article Use Messages in iCloud.

Note: Messages in iCloud uses iCloud storage. See Manage Apple ID settings on iPhone for information about iCloud storage.

Send and receive text messages on iPhone

Use the Messages app to send and receive texts, photos, videos, and audio messages. You can also personalize your messages with animated effects, Memoji stickers, iMessage apps, and more.

View contact info and conversation details.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions while driving, see Important safety information for iPhone.

Send a message

You can send a text message to one or more people.

1. Tap ✍️ at the top of the screen to start a new message, or tap an existing message.

Start a conversation.

A blue dot indicates unread messages.
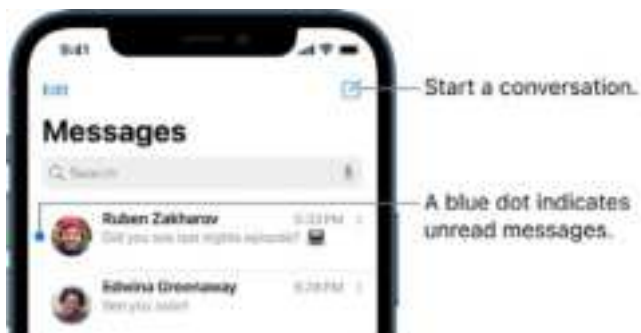
2. Enter the phone number, contact name, or Apple ID of each recipient. Or, tap ⊞, then choose contacts.

- On models with Dual SIM, to send an SMS/MMS message from a different line, tap the line shown, then choose the other line. See also Manage your cellular plans for Dual SIM.

3. Tap the text field, type your message, then tap ⊡ to send.

- An alert ⊞ appears if a message can't be sent. Tap the alert to try sending the message again.

💡 **Tip:** To see what time a message was sent or received, drag the message bubble to the left.

To view conversation details, then tap the name or phone number at the top of the screen. You can tap the contact to edit the contact card, share your location, view attachments, leave a group conversation, and more.

To return to the Messages list from a conversation, tap ‹ or swipe from the left edge.

Reply to a message

🎙 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Send a message to Eliza saying how about tomorrow"

- "Read my last message from Bob"

- "Reply that's great news"

Learn how to ask Siri

💡 **Tip:** When you wear AirPods Max, AirPods Pro, AirPods (2nd generation), or other supported headphones, Siri can read your incoming messages, and you can speak a reply for Siri to send. See Listen and respond to messages.

Or do the following:

1. In the Messages list, tap the conversation that you want to reply to.

   To search for contacts and content in conversations, pull down the Messages list and enter what you're looking for in the search field. Or, choose from the suggested contacts, links, photos, and more.

2. Tap the text field, then type your message.

   💡 **Tip:** To replace text with emoji, tap ⊞ or ⊞, then tap each highlighted word.

3. Tap ⊡ to send your message.

You can quickly reply to a message with a Tapback expression (for example, a thumbs up or a heart). Double-tap the message bubble that you want to respond to, then select a Tapback.

Share your name and photo

In Messages, you can share your name and photo when you start or respond to a new message. Your photo can be a Memoji, or custom image. When you open Messages for the first time, follow the instructions on your iPhone to choose your name and photo.

To change your name, photo, or sharing options, open Messages, tap ⬚, tap Edit Name and Photo, then do any of the following:

- *Change your profile image*: Tap Edit, then choose an option.

- *Change your name*: Tap the text fields where your name appears.

- *Turn sharing on or off*: Tap the button next to Name and Photo Sharing (green indicates that it's on).

- *Change who can see your profile*: Tap an option below Share Automatically (Name and Photo Sharing must be turned on).

Your Messages name and photo can also be used for your Apple ID and My Card in Contacts.

Pin a conversation

You can pin specific conversations to the top of the Messages list so the people you contact most always come first in the list.

Do any of the following:

- Swipe right on a conversation, then tap ⬚.

- Touch and hold a conversation, then drag it to the top of the list.

Unpin a conversation

You can unpin specific conversations at the top of the Messages list.

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold a conversation, then drag the message to the bottom of the list.

- Touch and hold a conversation, then tap ▓.

Switch from a Messages conversation to a FaceTime audio or FaceTime video call

In a Messages conversation, you can initiate a FaceTime audio or FaceTime video call with the person you're chatting with in Messages.

1. In a Messages conversation, tap ▓.

2. Tap FaceTime audio or FaceTime video.

Send a message to a group or business on iPhone

Use the Messages app 💬 to send photos, videos, and audio messages to groups of people. You can also send a message to a business using business chat.

Reply to a specific message in a conversation

You can respond to a specific message inline to improve clarity and help keep conversations organized.

1. In a conversation, double-tap (or touch and hold) a message, then tap 💬.

2. Write your response, then tap 🔼.
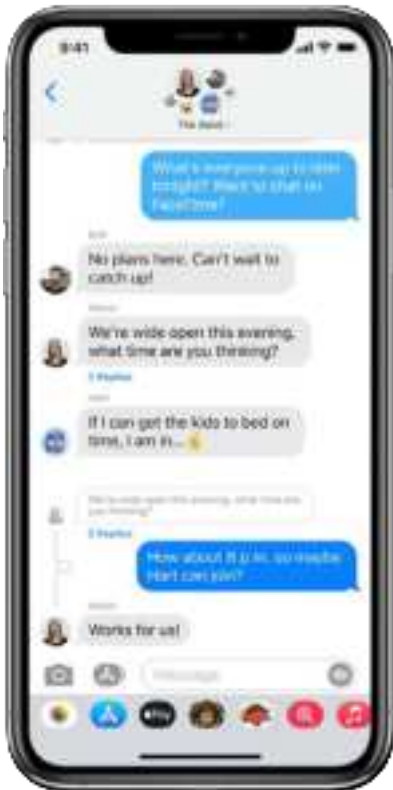
Mention people in a conversation

You can mention other people in a conversation to call their attention to a specific message. Depending on their settings, this can notify them even if they have muted the conversation.

1. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.

2. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

To change your notification settings for when you're mentioned in Messages, go to Settings ⚙ > Messages > Notify Me.

Change a group name and photo

The photo used for group conversations includes all participants and changes based on who was recently active. You can also assign a personalized photo to the group conversation.

Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation, then select Change Name and Photo, then choose an option.

Use Business Chat

In Messages, you can communicate with businesses that offer Business Chat. You can get answers to questions, resolve issues, get advice on what to buy, make purchases with Apple Pay, and more.

1. Search for the business you want to chat with using Maps, Safari, Search, or Siri.

2. Start a conversation by tapping a chat link in the search results—for example, 🔵, the company logo, or a text link (the appearance of the chat link varies with the context).
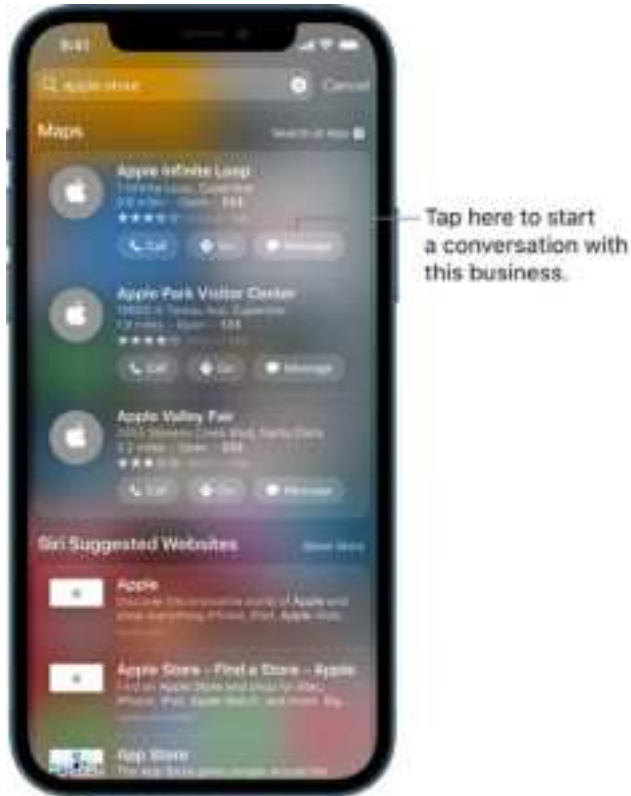
You can also initiate a chat with some businesses from their website or iOS app. See the Apple Support article How to use Business Chat.

Note: Business Chat messages you send appear in dark gray, to distinguish them from messages sent using iMessage (in blue) and SMS/MMS messages (in green).

Send photos, videos, and audio messages on iPhone

In the Messages app 💬, you can send photos, videos, and audio messages using iMessage or your SMS/MMS service. You can also share, save, or print attachments. Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.

For information about sending SMS/MMS attachments on models with Dual SIM, see Manage your cellular plans for Dual SIM.

Send a photo or video

1. In Messages, do any of the following while writing a message:

   - *Take a photo within Messages:* Tap ⬛, frame the shot in the viewfinder, then tap ⬜.

   - *Take a video within Messages:* Tap ⬛, choose Video mode, then tap 🔴.

   - *Choose an existing photo or video:* Tap 🌈 in the app drawer, then swipe left to browse through recent shots, or tap All Photos.

2. Tap 🔵 to send your message or ⬜ to cancel.

Mark up or edit a photo

You can mark up or edit a photo before you send it in a Messages conversation.

1. Tap ▓ in the app drawer, then choose a photo.

2. Tap the photo in the message bubble, then do any of the following:

   - Tap Markup, use the Markup tools to draw on the photo, then tap Save.

   - Tap Edit, use the photo editing tools to edit the photo, then tap Done.

3. Tap Done, add a message, then tap ▓ to send the photo, or tap ▓ to remove the photo from the message bubble.

Add camera effects to a photo or video

When you take a photo or video in a Messages conversation, you can add camera effects to it—such as filters, stickers, labels, and shapes.

1. In a Messages conversation, tap ▓, then choose Photo or Video mode.

2. Tap 🔲, then do any of the following:

   - Tap 🟤, then choose a Memoji (on supported models).

   - Tap 🔳, then choose a filter to apply to your picture.

   - Tap 🔳 to add a text label, or 🔳 to add a shape.

   - Tap 🔴 to add a Memoji sticker, or 🔴 to add an Emoji sticker.

3. Tap 🔲 to close the effect window.

4. Tap ⚪ to take a photo or 🔴 to record video.

5. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, where you can add a message, or tap 🔵 to send the photo or video directly.

Send an audio message

1. In a conversation, touch and hold 🔲 to record an audio message.

2. Tap 🔲 to listen to your message before you send it.

3. Tap 🔵 to send the message or 🔲 to cancel.

Note: To save space, iPhone automatically deletes audio messages two minutes after you listen to them, unless you tap Keep. To always keep audio messages, go to Settings ⚙ > Messages > Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

Listen or reply to an audio message

1. Raise iPhone to your ear to play incoming audio messages.

2. Raise it again to reply.

To turn this feature on or off, go to Settings ⚙ > Messages, then turn off Raise to Listen.

Share, save, print, copy, or delete a message or attachment

In a conversation, do any of the following with attachments:

- *Share, save, or print an attachment:* Tap the attachment, then tap 🔼.

- *Copy an attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, then tap Copy.

- *Share items from another app:* In the other app, tap Share or 🔼, then tap Messages.

- *Forward a message or attachment:* Touch and hold a message or attachment, tap More, select additional items if desired, then tap 🔵.

- *Delete an attachment:* Touch and hold a message or attachment, tap More, select additional items if desired, then tap 🔳.

Note: Attachments you send over iMessage (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your device may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you are composing an iMessage. If your message isn't sent, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

Share content with friends on iPhone

Use the Messages app 💬 to share music, episodes, news articles and more with friends.

Note: Note: You can use the Shared with You features when you share content from the Apple TV, News, Photos, Podcasts, and Safari apps.

Share content

Content you share with a friend in the Messages app 💬 is automatically organized in a Shared with You section inside the corresponding apps. This allows your friend to view the shared content at a time that's convenient for them.

In addition, if a friend discovers content that's been shared with them previously, a label indicating who shared it appears so they know it's been recommended before.

1. Select the content you want to share, then tap 🔳.

2. Compose a message or comment to include with the shared content, then tap 🔳.

To disable Automatic Sharing, or a Shared with You app, go to Settings 🔳 > Messages > Shared with You and tap Automatic Sharing or an app.

Continue the conversation

Content shared with you is automatically labeled in the corresponding apps. This allows you to see who shared the content with you later and easily continue the conversation.

1. View content that has been shared with you.

2. Tap the "Shared by" label at the top of the content.

3. Compose a message or comment to include with the shared content, then tap 🔳.

Save shared content

You can save content that has been shared with you iso you can more easily locate it. This allows you to easily locate this content later and more quickly find it in search results.

Tap Shared with You in the app where you want to pin content, then tap <ICON>.

To unpin shared content, tap Shared with You, then tap <ICON>.

Send animated effects in Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app 💬, you can animate a single message with a bubble effect or fill the entire message screen with a full-screen effect (for example, balloons or confetti). You can even send a personal message with invisible ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.

You need iMessage to send and receive message effects. See About iMessage and SMS/MMS.

Send a handwritten message

Use your finger to write a message. The recipient sees the message animate, just as ink flows on paper.

1. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.

2. Tap 📝 on the keyboard.

3. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.

4. Tap 📤 to send your message or 🔙 to cancel.

Scroll to write a longer message.

Choose a saved message. Touch and hold to delete a saved message.

Return to the keyboard.

After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved messages again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap 🔄.

Use a bubble effect

Use bubble effects to animate the message bubble.

1. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.

2. Touch and hold 🎁, then tap the gray dots to preview different bubble effects.

   💡 **Tip:** Want to send a personal message? When you use invisible ink, the message remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.
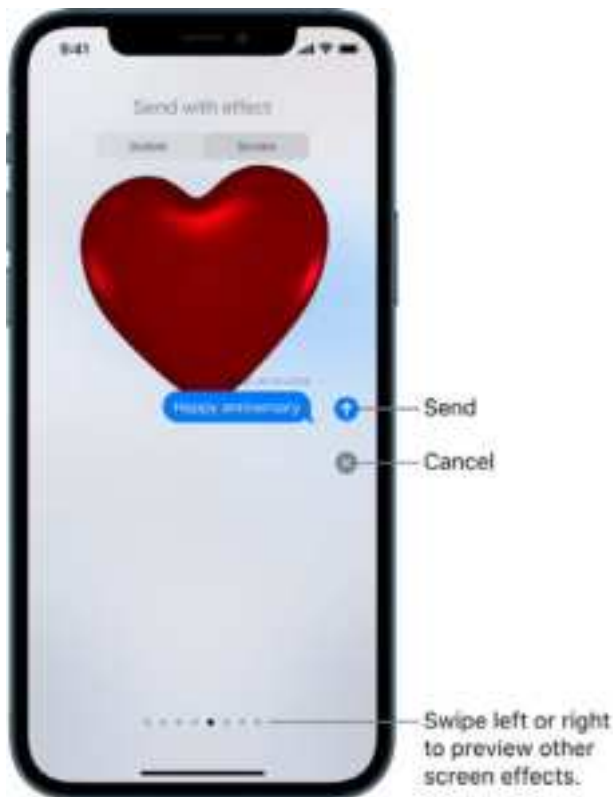
3. Tap 🎁 to send the message or 🎁 to cancel.
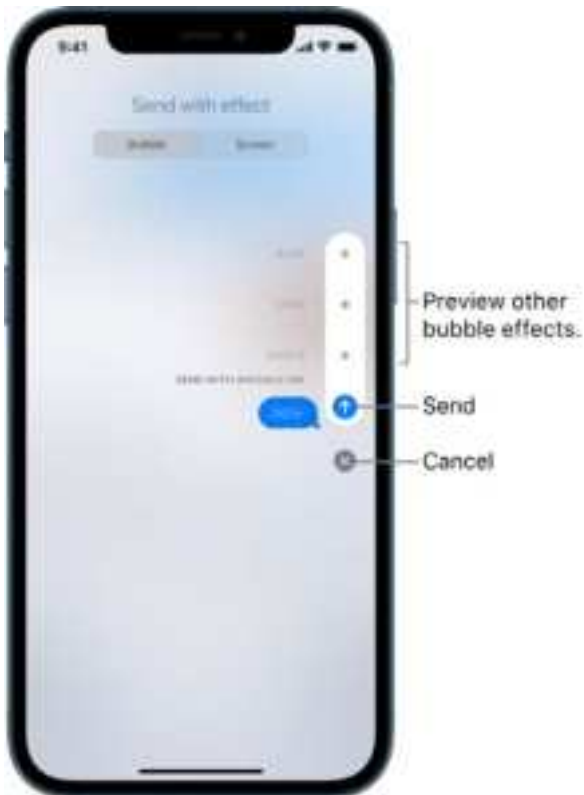
Use a full-screen effect

Use full-screen effects to animate the message screen.

1. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.

2. Touch and hold 🎁, then tap Screen.

3. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.

4. Tap 🎁 to send the message or 🌫 to cancel.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for "Happy birthday"

- Confetti for "Congratulations"

- Fireworks for "Happy New Year"

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app 💬, you can decorate a conversation with stickers, play a game, share songs, and more—all through iMessage apps—without leaving Messages. You can expand your message options by downloading more iMessage apps from the App Store.

Browse iMessage apps.
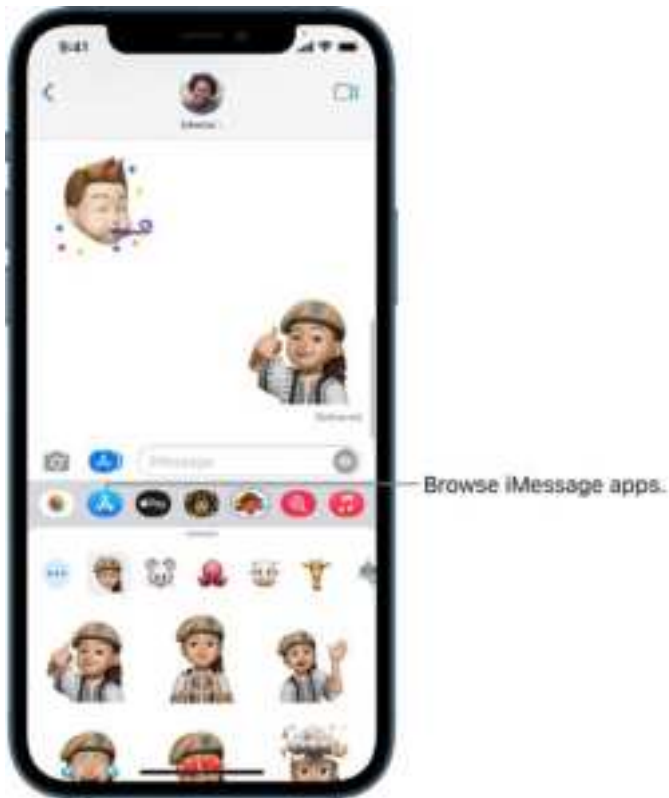
Browse and download iMessage apps

1. In a Messages conversation, tap 🔵 to open the iMessages App Store.

2. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then tap the price to purchase an app or tap Get to download a free app.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple ID.

Use an iMessage app

1. In a conversation, tap an iMessage app in the app drawer.

2. Tap an item in the iMessage app to add it to a message bubble.

3. Add a comment if you want, then tap 🟦 to send your message or 🔳 to cancel.

Decorate with stickers

If you've downloaded a sticker app from the App Store, you can enhance your photos and videos with stickers in Messages.

1. In a conversation, tap a sticker app in the app drawer.

2. Touch and hold a sticker, then drag it on top of a message in the conversation. Before you release it, you can do any of the following:

   - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.

   - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

   You can also place the sticker on top of another sticker, or on a photo.

To see text that's covered by a sticker, double-tap the sticker.

To see more information about the sticker, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details. You can do the following:

- See who sent the sticker.

- View the iMessage app that sent the sticker.

- Delete the sticker—swipe left, then tap Delete.

Manage iMessage apps

1. Tap ⬚⬚⬚ in the app drawer.

2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following with your iMessage apps:

   - *Reorder apps:* Drag ≡.

   - *Add an app to your Favorites:* Tap 🟢.

   - *Remove an app from your Favorites:* Tap 🔴.

   - *Hide an app:* Turn the app off.

   - *Delete an app:* Swipe left on the app, then tap Delete.

Use Memoji in Messages on iPhone

Use the Messages app 🟢 to express yourself with Memoji and personalized Memoji sticker packs that match your personality and mood. On models with a TrueDepth camera, you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

Create your own Memoji

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin color and freckles, hairstyle and color, facial features, headwear, glasses, and more. You can create multiple Memoji for different moods.

1. In a conversation, tap 📷, then tap ❄️.

2. Tap each feature and choose the options you want. As you add features to your Memoji, your character comes to life.

3. Tap Done to add the Memoji to your collection.

To edit, duplicate, or delete a Memoji, tap 📷, tap the Memoji, then tap 😀.

Send Memoji and Memoji stickers

Messages automatically generates sticker packs based on your Memoji and Memoji characters. You can use stickers to express a range of emotions in new ways.

1. In a conversation, tap 📷.

2. Tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack.

3. To send a sticker do one of the following:

   - Tap the sticker to add it to the message bubble. Add a comment if you want, then tap 🔼 to send.

   - Touch and hold a sticker, then drag it on top of a message in the conversation. The sticker is sent automatically when you add it to the message.

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On supported models you can send Memoji messages that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

1. In a conversation, tap ![icon], then choose a Memoji.

2. Tap ![icon] to record your facial expressions and voice. Tap the red square to stop recording.

   Tap Replay to review your message.

3. Tap ![icon] to send your message or ![icon] to cancel.

You can also take a picture or video of yourself as a Memoji, decorate it with stickers, then send it; see Add camera effects to a photo or video. Or you can become a Memoji in a FaceTime conversation.

Send a Digital Touch effect in Messages on iPhone

In an iMessage conversation in the Messages app ![icon], you can use Digital Touch to send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more. You can even add a Digital Touch effect to a photo or video.

Send a sketch

1. Tap 🖼️ in the app drawer.

2. Tap the color dot to choose a color, then draw with one finger.

   You can change the color, then start drawing again.

3. Tap 🔵 to send your message, or tap ⬛ to delete it.

Express your feelings

1. Tap 🖼️ in the app drawer.

2. Send one of the following animations using gestures on the canvas. Your feelings are sent automatically when you finish the gesture:

   - *Tap:* Tap with one finger to create a burst of color. You can change the color, then tap again.

   - *Fireball:* Touch and hold with one finger.

   - *Kiss:* Tap with two fingers.

   - *Heartbeat:* Touch and hold with two fingers.

   - *Heartbreak:* Touch and hold with two fingers until you see a heartbeat, then drag down to break the heart.

   Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you send a Digital Touch heartbeat.


Add a Digital Touch effect to a photo or video

1. Tap 🖼️ in the app drawer.

2. Tap 📷.

3. Tap 📷 to take a photo or 🎥 to record a video.

4. Add a Digital Touch effect, such as a sketch or kiss.

5. Tap 🔵 to send your message, or tap ⬛ to delete it.

Send and receive money with Apple Pay on iPhone (U.S. only)

In the Messages app 💬, you can use Apple Pay to send and receive money quickly and easily. There's no app to download, and you can use the cards you already have with Apple Pay.

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in Wallet. See Set up and use Apple Cash on iPhone (U.S. only).
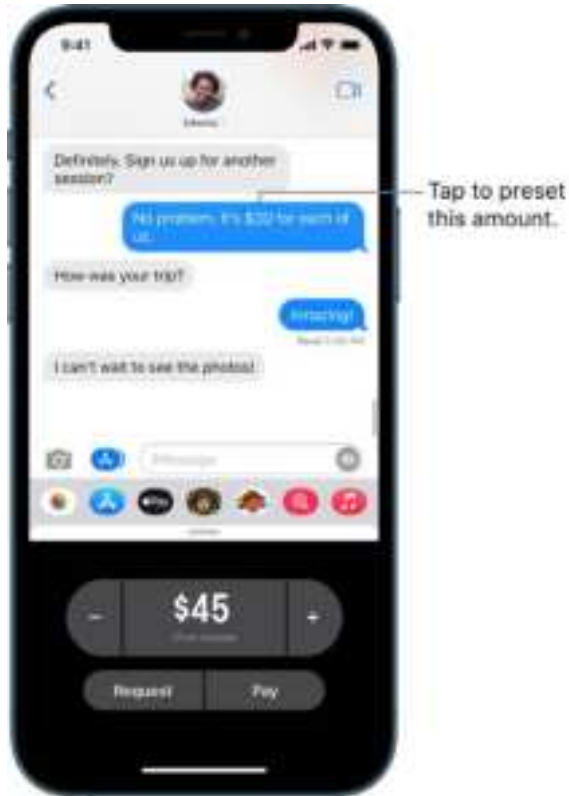
Note: Before you send or receive payments with Apple Pay, you need to agree to the terms and conditions of this service.

Send a payment in Messages

🎙️ **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Apple Pay 75 dollars to Phillip for the zipline tour" or "Send 15 dollars to Kim for lunch with Apple Pay." Learn how to ask Siri.

You can also do the following:

1. In an iMessage conversation, tap 📟, then enter the amount.

   💡 **Tip:** If there's an underlined monetary amount in a message, tap it to preset the payment.

2. Tap Pay, add a comment if you want, then tap 📟.

3. Review the payment information. If you don't have sufficient funds in Apple Cash, you can pay the balance using your debit card in Wallet.

4. Authenticate the payment with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

You can cancel a payment that hasn't been accepted. Tap the payment bubble, then tap Cancel Payment.

Request a payment

🎤 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Ask Kim for 26 dollars with Apple Pay." Learn how to ask Siri.

You can also do the following:

1. In an iMessage conversation, tap ▨.

2. Enter the amount, then tap Request.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Change message notifications on iPhone

In Settings ⚙️, you can set up and manage message notifications for the Messages app 💬 and filter unknown senders.

Set a focus and schedule a summary of your notifications

Focus helps you stay in the moment when you want to concentrate on an activity or step away from your iPhone. Focus can reduce distractions—allowing only notifications you want to receive (ones that match your focus)—and lets other people and apps know you're busy. See Schedule a notification summary.

When Focus is enabled, Messages will automatically tell apps and people that you have notifications silenced. To manage Focus Status or set an Auto-Reply, see Set up Focus on iPhone.

Manage notifications for messages

1. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Notifications > Messages.

2. Choose options, including the following:

   - Turn Allow Notifications on or off.

   - Set the position and locations of message notifications.

   - Choose the alert sound for message notifications.

   - Choose when message previews should appear.

See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Set the alert sound for messages

1. Go to Settings ▣ > Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (other models).

2. Tap Text Tone, then do one of the following:

   - Tap Vibration, then choose an option.

   - Tap a sound below Alert Tones.

   - Tap Tone Store to download an alert sound from the iTunes Store.

See Change iPhone sounds and vibrations.

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open Contacts, then select a contact.

2. Tap Edit, then tap Text Tone.

3. Choose an option below Alert Tones.

   To allow alerts for messages sent by this contact even when Do Not Disturb is on, turn on Emergency Bypass.

Mute notifications for a conversation

1. In the Messages list, swipe left on the conversation.

2. Tap Hide Alerts.

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

In the Messages app ▣, you can block unwanted messages, filter messages from unknown senders, and report spam or junk messages.

Block messages from a specific person or number

1. In a Messages conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.

2. Tap info.

3. Scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

To view and manage your list of blocked contacts and phone numbers, go to Settings ▣ > Messages > Blocked Contacts. See the Apple Support article Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

Filter iMessage messages from unknown senders

Filtering messages from unknown senders turns off iMessage notifications from senders who aren't in your contacts and sorts the messages into the Unknown Senders tab in the Messages list.

1. Go to Settings ⚙ > Messages.

2. Turn on Filter Unknown Senders.

   Note: You can't open any links in a message from an unknown sender until you add the sender to your contacts or reply to the message.

Report spam or junk messages

With iMessage, a message you receive from someone who isn't saved in your contacts might be identified as possible spam or junk. You can report these messages to Apple.

In the message, tap Report Junk, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

The sender's information and the message are sent to Apple, and the message is permanently deleted from your device.

Note: Reporting junk or spam doesn't prevent the sender from sending messages, but you can block the number to stop receiving them.

To report spam or junk messages you receive with SMS or MMS, contact your carrier.

Delete messages on iPhone

In the Messages app 💬, you can delete messages and entire conversations. You can't recover a deleted conversation.

With Messages in iCloud, anything you delete from iPhone is also deleted from your other Apple devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See Use Messages in iCloud.